

Frost's Practical Grammar.

A
PRACTICAL
ENGLISH GRAMMAR;

WITH
PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES

IN
ORTHOGRAPHY,

ANALYSIS, AND GRAMMATICAL COMPOSITION,

ADAPTED TO THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

BY JOHN FROST, A. M.

PROFESSOR OF BELLES LETTRES IN THE HIGH SCHOOL OF PHILADELPHIA;
AUTHOR OF "EASY EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION," "HISTORY OF
THE UNITED STATES," "AMERICAN SPEAKER," &C. &C.

PHILADELPHIA:
THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT & CO.
1842.

Aug 1 758.42.403

~~Aug 1 1018.42.10~~

1860 Aug. 11.

Wm. B. Fildes

J. Brown

Entered, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1842, by
JOHN FROST,

in the office of the clerk of the district court of the United States in
and for the eastern district of Pennsylvania.

J. FAGAN, STEREOTYPER.

T. K. AND P. G. COLLINS, PRINTERS.

(2)

PREFACE.

In the title-page, this book is called "A Practical English Grammar." The Author has endeavoured to give it a just claim to this title, by rendering it strictly ~~throughout~~ throughout. He has observed that most of the grammars now in use appear to consider the English language as having been formed not for the purpose of being spoken and written, but merely for the purpose of being *parsed*.* Accordingly, *parsing* is made the grand object of grammatical instruction; and it is considered, that if a boy can parse correctly and fluently, he is a good grammarian. The consequence is, that pupils toil for years in English grammar; learn to parse with great fluency and exactness; and, nevertheless, violate the most obvious rules of grammar in almost every sentence which they speak or write. Many of them are deep in the theory of syntax, who are woefully deficient in the practice of orthography. This deficiency is not the fault of teachers, but of the text-books which they are under the necessity of using; and it is precisely for the purpose of remedying the evil and giving a more practical character to grammatical instruction, that the following work has been prepared.

As it was the Author's ~~purpose~~ purpose, rather than to offer any new theories on the subject of grammar, he has left undisturbed the

* The Author would not be understood to disparage *parsing*, as a grammatical exercise. It is useful in its proper place and proportion, and it has received its due share of attention in this work.

(3)

forms and classifications in general use; and has endeavoured, as far as possible, to render the pupils who shall use the book expert grammarians, by requiring them, through the use of copious oral and written Exercises, to reduce their knowledge to practice, as fast as it is acquired.

In the task of writing grammatical composition, he has not hesitated to draw on his own experience and observation having convinced him of their utility in aiding the exertions of both pupil and teacher.

In accordance with this design, it has been found necessary to assign different proportions of space to the various parts of the subject from those which they have received in other grammars.

Orthography has been more fully treated than usual; and copious exercises are given. A faithful inculcation of the general rules for spelling, by means of exercises of this kind, will occasion a great saving of time to the learner. The most obvious rules are perpetually violated by those who have neglected this species of exercise. The rules of construction are much shorter than usual; and the rules of arrangement* are more numerous and particular.

The subject of Derivation, which is now claiming so large a share of attention from teachers, has, for the sake of convenience, been thrown into an Appendix. This portion of the book will by no means be deemed superfluous, by those who have witnessed the delight with which young persons address themselves to the study of the origin and history of words. Its utility in forming accurate habits of thought, and giving a mastery over language, is universally admitted. The article devoted to this subject will be found more sys-

* The same rules of arrangement which are found in the Author's "Easy Exercises in Composition," are used in this work.

tematic, full and exact, than any treatise, comprised in so small a space, which has yet appeared. The writer would not express himself so strongly on this subject, if it were not also the fact that this article has been copied entire from M'Culloch's Grammar. To the same work he is also indebted for many of his definitions, rules, and exercises. He would have adopted also Mr. M'Culloch's views with respect to the classification of adjectives and pronouns, and the conjugation of verbs, but he was desirous to leave the prevailing system of English grammar, introduced by Lowth, and disseminated by Murray, and his other commentators, untouched; and to innovate only where he believed that the methods of instruction could be improved.

The definitions and rules designed to be committed to memory, have been expressed with as much brevity as was deemed consistent with clearness and simplicity; and the practical Exercises appended to each separate branch, have been made as copious and varied as the limits of a cheap school-book would permit.

From the same work to which the author acknowledges himself so largely indebted in every part of this volume—M'Culloch's Grammar—he copies the following article, as the most suitable supplement to this Preface.

Hints in regard to the mode of teaching Grammar.

It is desirable that the pupil, before proceeding to study grammar systematically, should possess as much previous acquaintance with the subject as will enable him at least to distinguish the four principal Parts of Speech; and this preliminary information the teacher should attempt to give him by oral instruction, in the course of his daily lessons in reading and spelling.

In using a text-book, the chief error to be avoided is that of making the study a mere exercise of memory. It is desirable, no doubt, that fundamental definitions and leading rules should be got by heart; but it is still more desirable that the young person should be able to understand

their signification, and to answer all questions that may be put in regard to them.

It may perhaps be thought, that the exercises which are subjoined to the various sections, afford such means of ascertaining the progress of the learner as ought to supersede the necessity of teaching those sections themselves *catechetically*. But experience will prove this supposition to be erroneous. These exercises are, indeed, designed as a trial of the pupil's knowledge and acuteness; but they are necessarily too general and limited to afford a sufficient test. And it will probably be found, that a child may be able to perform them all, who has but a vague comprehension of the principles, and a scanty acquaintance with the leading facts of the science.

It may be proper also to guard against the error of supposing that the exclusive, or even the chief end in view, is to make the pupil acquainted with the practice of *parsing*. Were this all that is designed, there would be no necessity for calling in the aid of a text-book, as a knowledge of the distinguishing properties of the different kinds of words, as well as of their syntactical connexion, might be communicated with sufficient accuracy by mere *viva voce* instruction. The object of teaching grammar, as a science, is not merely to enable the student to parse, but also to familiarize him generally with the structure of language, and to give him such an accurate acquaintance with the etymology, application, and combination of words, as will fit him to understand his mother-tongue with ease, and to speak and write it with propriety.

In teaching from the following work, different methods may be followed; and the type in which it is printed will be found so varied and disposed, as to afford the teacher considerable facilities in adapting his course to the scholar's acquirements, and the time that can be allotted to the study.

If the master wishes merely to communicate a *general* knowledge of the subject, or if the period for study is limited, he may satisfy himself with what appears in the large type, and that part of the small which is necessary to exemplify the rules.

If his pupil has no previous knowledge of the science, and is not restricted as to time, he may take the large type with its illustrations, (omitting, however, the introductory section, headed "Nature and Objects of Grammar,") as a *first* course; and leave the remaining small type to be taken up, along with the introductory matter, in a *second* and *supplementary* course.

If the scholar has adequate preliminary knowledge, and possesses the command of time, the best plan will be to follow the order of the work; in which case — *with respect to the large type*, the pupil, after having studied it so as to understand its meaning, should be required to commit it accurately to memory; and *with respect to the small type*, to make it

the subject of frequent perusal and examination, in the same way as is often done with reading lessons in seminaries. It is only in this way that the whole science can be brought fully before the student in its due proportions.

Teachers who have previously employed text-books in which *spelling of words, derivation, and arrangement of words in sentences*, are despatched in a few paragraphs, will probably object to the great space allotted to these subjects in the present work, and feel disposed to omit them, either wholly or in part, in the process of tuition. But it is hoped that this expedient will not be adopted without mature consideration. There is no branch of grammar of greater practical utility than *spelling*. An acquaintance with its *details* is of incalculable moment, especially to those who have no prospect of obtaining a classical education; and the teacher cannot confer a greater benefit upon mere English scholars, than by requiring them to get accurately by heart the leading roots, prefixes, and affixes, of the language. Nor is an acquaintance with the general rules which apply to the *spelling of words*, and their *arrangement in sentences*, unimportant. *Arrangement* is a part of Syntax as essential as either Concord or Government; and the *general laws of spelling* will scarcely be deemed useless by any one who remembers that the design in including Orthography in a course of grammar, is not so much to teach the art of spelling, as to impress upon the mind the general analogies which prevail in this, as in every other branch of the science.

With respect to the mode of teaching the *details* of the grammar, no specific directions can be given. But it may be suggested generally, that much explanatory information, which no text-book can supply, must be given by the teacher in the course of instruction; that the pupil should be required to find out additional illustrations of each of the definitions and rules; that he should not be allowed to pass any section until he has thoroughly mastered it; that the knowledge thus acquired should be impressed upon his memory by frequent revisals and repetitions; that the exercises should be written out as well as read by him; and that he should be constantly called upon, in the course of his ordinary reading, to apply his grammatical knowledge to the explanation of all the varieties of phraseology which may happen to occur.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION :

Origin and uses of Grammar.....	Page 13
General description of English Grammar.....	19

ORTHOGRAPHY :

Letters.....	20
Syllables—Spelling	22
Final Letters.	23
Augments	24
Compounds, &c.....	25
Exercises on Orthography.....	26

ETYMOLOGY :

Classification of Words—Noun	29
Article—Adjective	30
Pronoun	31
Verb.....	32
Adverb.....	33
Interjection.....	35
Exercises on the Classification of Words.....	37
Additional Exercises	43
Exercises to be written by the Pupil	44

INFLECTION OF WORDS :

Inflection of Nouns—	
Number.....	48
Gender.....	51
Case.....	54
Inflection of Adjectives.....	55
Inflection of Pronouns	57
Inflection of Verbs.....	58
Inflection of Compound Verbs	70
Inflection of Active and Passive Verbs.....	71
Moods	71
Tenses.....	73

Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Have</i>	74
Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Be</i>	77
Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Love</i> —Active Voice	80
Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Love</i> —Passive Voice	83
Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Know</i> —Active Voice	86
Conjugation of the Verb <i>To Know</i> —Passive Voice	90

EXERCISES ON THE INFLECTION OF WORDS:

On the Noun—

Number	92
Exercises to be written	93
Gender	95
Exercises to be written	95
Case	97
Exercises to be written	97

On the Adjective	100
Exercises to be written	100

On the Pronoun	102
Exercises to be written	102

On the Verb	104
Exercises to be written	106

Derivation	112
------------------	-----

SYNTAX:

Rules of Syntax	115
Rules of Construction	115
Subject and Verb	115
Object	116
Nouns and Pronouns	117
Article	119
Verbs	119
Prepositions	121
Conjunctions	121
Interjections	123
Exercises on Construction	123
Miscellaneous Exercises on Construction	128
Exercises to be written	130
Rules of Arrangement	139
Subject and Verb	139
Verb, and its Object	140
Position of Adjectives	140
Position of Pronouns	141
Position of the Infinitive and the Auxiliaries	141

Position of Adverbs	141
Position of Prepositions	142
Position of Conjunctions	142
Exercises on Arrangement	143
Exercises to be written	145
Exercises in Syntactical Parsing	150
Punctuation	154
Exercises on Punctuation	158

PROSODY:

Versification	160
Iambic Verse	162
Trochaic Verse	164
Anapaestic Verse	165
Poetical Licenses	166
Exercises on Prosody	167

APPENDIX:

Derivation	169
Origin of Words	169
Origin of English Roots	170
Separable Roots	171
Inseparable Roots	174
Latin Roots found only in Composition	184
Greek Roots found only in Composition	184
Prepositions and Conjunctions	187
Origin of English Derivations	189
Prefixes	190
Affixes	192
Primary Signification of Words	198

INTRODUCTION.

THE ORIGIN AND USES OF GRAMMAR.

If, in conversation, we should hear a person use the following expression, "Him and me are brothers," we should say that he was speaking incorrectly, and that he could not have received a good education. The person, thus censured, might inquire in return, "Why his language was incorrect, since it was quite plain and intelligible?" The answer would, of course, be, It is incorrect, because it is not according to the principles of Grammar. He might then reply, "What is this Grammar, which undertakes to direct how I must speak, and what words I must use, in order to be considered a person of good education?" We might then reply to him with a definition of the subject of this little volume.

Grammar is a science and an art: as a science, it explains the principles and usages of language; and it is the art of speaking and writing correctly. There are many who understand it as a science, but do not practise it as an art. It is our purpose, in the following pages, to aid the pupil, as far as may be in our power, in becoming a proficient in both these respects.

The person of whom we have already spoken, might pursue his inquiries a little farther, and say, "Whence does Grammar receive its authority? Did it exist before language? Did people learn to speak by it at first?"

Give a specimen of incorrect language. Why is it incorrect? What
2 (13)

We should answer, By no means. Language existed long before Grammar was invented; in the same manner as animals, plants, and rocks existed before the sciences of zoology, botany, and mineralogy were invented. As the animals, plants, and rocks are the subjects of these sciences, so words and phrases, which have been sanctioned by national and reputable usage, are the subjects of the science of Grammar. It derives its authority from the accuracy with which it determines what is, and what is not, the usage of good writers and speakers.

This brings us back to the point from which we started; and enables us to show that the expression above cited is incorrect and ungrammatical, because it is contrary to long established usage among educated people, who speak the English language.

The person who used the expression might turn upon us again, and inquire, "Why should I learn English Grammar? Of what consequence is it to me or to my friends, whether I speak according to its rules or not, if I can make myself understood?"

As this is a question which often arises in the minds of young pupils who have not the courage to put it to their teachers, we will endeavour to answer it fully.

In the first place, it is not easy, nor is it always possible for a speaker or writer to make his language intelligible without conforming to the rules of grammar. Where the subject on which a person speaks or writes is difficult or intricate, it is absolutely necessary to use grammatical language, in order to convey his meaning clearly to the mind of the hearer or reader.

In the next place, the principles of grammar having been adopted by general consent, they are the best means which we have for interpreting or explaining the meaning of spoken or

is Grammar? Did language exist before grammar? With what sciences is grammar compared? What is the first reason assigned for learning

written language. The importance of conforming to these principles may be thus illustrated. If a piece of writing, for example a contract, or a man's will, were executed in such a manner as to admit of two different interpretations, one ungrammatical, giving the advantage, to be derived from the contract or will, to John; and the other grammatical, giving the advantage to Thomas, the law of the land, which determines all such matters, would decide in favour of the grammatical interpretation; and would, consequently, give the advantage to Thomas. It is easy to perceive, therefore, that the disposal of a fortune might be made to depend upon the grammatical interpretation of a sentence.

This illustration is sufficient to show that it is useful and important to understand grammar sufficiently to be able to conform strictly to its rules in writing.

But the utility of grammar is not confined to the correct execution of legal instruments.

It is also an indispensable qualification for those who seek distinction in literary pursuits; and it is necessary to the respectable discharge of the commonest offices and trusts in business. The clerk, the trader, or the mechanic, as well as the author or the professional man, will meet with difficulties and mortifications at every step of his career in life, if he is unable to write a correct and handsome letter, or draw up a neatly composed report or memorial.

Again, one should learn grammar to enable him to form a just critical estimate of the English and American literature, and to relish its beauties. If he does not understand grammar, he cannot pronounce with confidence whether this or that book be correctly written or not; still less is he qualified to decide respecting its rhetorical beauties or blemishes; because grammar is the introduction to rhetoric, and no proficiency can be

grammar?—the second? Give the illustration. For what is grammar an indispensable qualification? In what other pursuits is it necessary? How does grammar aid our judgment respecting the merits of books?

made in the latter study without a previous acquaintance with the former.

It is also important to understand and apply the principles of grammar in our common conversation; not only because it enables us to make our language understood by educated persons, but because it furnishes the readiest evidence of our having received a good education ourselves, enables us to converse with intelligent people on equal terms, and, to a certain extent, furnishes us with a passport to the best society.

Every science reduces the objects of which it treats into certain classes, in which these objects are arranged according to the degree of resemblance which they bear to each other. To a person ignorant of botany, the innumerable plants and trees which form the subject of that science present a complete chaos; and he is unable to determine their properties, or even remember the names of a thousandth part of them; but, by means of regular classification and systematic arrangement, the science of botany has rendered the study of plants an easy and agreeable task; and one who is acquainted with it is delighted with its simplicity and order.

In like manner, to a person ignorant of grammar, the many thousand words in a language, the relations of those words to each other, and the laws which determine their correct usage in speaking and writing, present a subject of much perplexity and doubt; and, in attempting to write his own language, he is always uncertain whether he is expressing himself correctly, or exposing his want of knowledge by palpable blunders. On the other hand, the person who is acquainted with the science of grammar, having seen the words reduced to a few comprehensive classes, their relations pointed out with accuracy, and the proper method of using them strictly determined by reference to the practice of reputable writers, is never at a loss what word to use, or how to place it, in order to express him-

To what is grammar the introduction? In what other respects is it important? Why is classification necessary in science? How is it use-

self correctly. All such questions have been decided by the science.

The application of taste to fine writing—the determining what form of expression is elegant or coarse—belongs properly to rhetoric, which treats of the higher efforts of composition. It is the province of grammar simply to determine what is *correct* according to the usage of reputable writers. A sentence may be grammatically correct which is not written according to the laws of rhetoric; but a sentence cannot be rhetorically correct which violates the rules of grammar. Grammar, therefore, as we have already remarked, is absolutely necessary as an introduction to the study of rhetoric; it is, consequently, indispensable for any one who would attempt the higher beauties of composition.

fully applied in grammar? What is it the province of grammar to determine?

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

1. GRAMMAR is the *science* which exhibits, in a systematic form, the leading principles and usages of language.

2. Grammar, when applied to practice, is also considered as an *art*; and, in this point of view, it is defined to be the art of speaking and writing correctly.

3. In languages which have both a *written* and a *spoken* form, the usages of the former, rather than of the latter, determine the rules of grammar.

4. The written is always more perfect than the spoken form of a language. Conversation being common to the unlearned and ignorant, as well as the educated classes of society, admits of many liberties which are no longer permitted when the language is reduced to writing. In this case, it becomes necessary to conform to the usage of the best writers. It is upon the practice of such writers that the rules of grammar are founded.

5. Written language consists of a succession of sentences.

6. Sentences are composed of words, words are composed of syllables, and syllables of letters; so that the grammar of a written language treats of *letters, syllables, words, and sentences*.

7. ENGLISH GRAMMAR exhibits, in a systematic form, the principles and usages of the English language; and, when applied to practice, it is the art of speaking and writing the English language correctly.

8. It is divided into four parts: ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PROSODY.

9. *Orthography* treats of letters, syllables, and the spelling of words.

1. What is grammar considered as a science?—2. As an art? 3. What is said of written language? 4. Upon what are the rules of grammar founded? 6. Of what does the grammar of a written language treat? 7. Define English Grammar. 8. How is it divided? 9. What is the

10. *Etymology* treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

11. *Syntax* treats of the proper method of arranging words so as to form sentences according to the usage of the most approved writers.

12. *Prosody* treats of the structure of poetical composition.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

13. Orthography treats of letters, syllables, and the spelling of words.

I. LETTERS.

14. A *letter* is a mark or character representing an elementary sound in language.

15. The English alphabet consists of twenty-six letters.

16. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

17. A *Vowel* is a letter which makes by itself a perfect sound.

18. A *Consonant* is a letter which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

19. *A, e, i, o, u,* (and *w* and *y*, when they do not begin a word or syllable,) are vowels.

20. The remaining nineteen letters, (with *w* and *y*, when they begin a word or syllable,) are consonants.

The distinction of letters into vowels and consonants arises from the structure of the human organs of speech. The sounds produced by the openings of the organs, and which may be prolonged without changing their position, are represented by the vowels; the sounds

subject of Orthography?—10. Etymology?—11. Syntax?—12. Prosody? 14. Define a letter. 15. How many in English? 16. How divided? 17. Define a Vowel.—18. A Consonant. 19. Which are vowels? 20.

produced by the joinings or shuttings of the organs are represented by the consonants.

Consonants are divided into mutes and semi-vowels, according as the articulations, or joinings of the organs in the enunciation of them, are more or less close. Thus *k, p,* and *t,* which wholly intercept the voice, as in the syllables *ek, ep, et,* are called mutes; *b, d,* and *g,* which admit a short prolongation of sound, as in *eb, ed, eg,* are called semi-vowels.

The consonants have also received different names from the organs chiefly employed in uttering them. Thus, *p, b, f, v,* are named labials, or letters of the lip; *s, z,* dentals, or letters of the teeth; *d, t,* gingivals, or letters of the gums; *g, j, k,* palatals, or letters of the palate; *m, n,* nasals, or letters of the nose; *l, r,* linguals, or letters of the tongue. But, as more than one organ is concerned in the utterance of almost every consonant, these names are not *strictly,* but only *generally,* applicable.

21. The union of two vowels in one sound is called a *Diphthong*.

When both vowels are heard, the diphthong is called *proper*; as *oi* in voice. When only one is heard, it is called an *improper* diphthong; as *ea* in eagle.

22. The union of three vowels in one sound is called a *Triphthong*.

The diphthongs in English are numerous; the triphthongs are only three, *eau, ieu,* and *iew.* *U,* preceded by *q,* is never reckoned part of a diphthong or triphthong, but treated as if it were part of the *q.*

23. In written compositions, the letters have two forms—*capitals* and *small* letters.

24. *Capitals* are used only at the beginning of words in particular situations.

25. *Small letters* form the body of the composition.

26. The following are the situations in which words are begun with capitals:—

The first word of every sentence, whether in prose or verse; the first word of every line in poetry; the first word of a quotation in a direct form; the names of the Supreme Being; all proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names; the names of the days of the week and of the months of the year; any word which the

Which consonants? 21. Define Diphthong.—22. Triphthong. 23. How many forms have letters? 24. When are capitals used? 25. Small letters? 26. Describe the situations in which words begin with capitals.

writer may think very important, as the Reformation, the Revolution; the pronoun I, and the interjection O; and generally, also, the name of an object personified, as, "Where is thy sting, O Death!"

II. SYLLABLES.

27. A syllable is a single sound, represented by one or more letters; as *a*, *an*, *and*, *wand*.

28. In every syllable there must be at least one vowel.

29. Words of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; words of two syllables, *Dissyllables*; words of three syllables *Trisyllables*; and words of more than three syllables, *Poly-syllables*.

The best mode of dividing words into syllables is to follow, as nearly as possible, the divisions made by the organs of speech in accurately pronouncing them. Thus, *hab-it*, *ham-let*, *cru-el*, *an-i-mal*.

The only case in which it is allowable to adopt a different mode is when the pronunciation is anomalous or peculiar. Thus, in such words as *vicious*, *condition*, &c., where *ci* and *ti* are pronounced like *sh*, the division is *vi-cious*, *con-di-tion*, not *vici-ous*, *con-diti-on*.

III. SPELLING.*

30. Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

The spelling of the English language, in common with that of all living languages, is regulated chiefly, though not wholly, by the prevailing mode of pronunciation.

The chief anomalies in English orthography proceed from the number

* To TEACHERS—The rules and exercises here given are of a strictly practical character, and are, of course, designed to accustom the pupil to correct spelling. Every teacher will use them in the manner which his own judgment may dictate. I would, however, suggest that, at first, the pupil should be required to write the exercises, and merely refer to the rules in order to write them correctly. In reviewing the grammar, it may be expedient for the pupil to commit the rules to memory. The importance of spelling correctly will furnish a sufficient inducement to the most indolent learner to incur this small amount of labour for the purpose of acquiring so necessary an accomplishment.

27. What is a syllable? 28. What must there be in every syllable? 29. How are words classified with respect to the number of their syllables? 30. What is Spelling?

of silent consonants, and the impossibility of describing their situations by any thing like general rules.

The following instances of words in which the consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, and *h*, are silent, will exhibit the nature of English usage on this point:—

Debt	Indict	Handsome	Gnat	Thyme
Dumb	Victuals	Groundsel	Reign	Asthma
Subtle	Scent	Knowledge	Impugn	Heir
Bdellium	Ascend	Fieldfare	Phlegm	Rhetoric

Almost the only orthographical usages that approach to such uniformity as to warrant the deduction of general rules from them, are those which respect the *final letters* of words, and the mode in which *augments*, or additional syllables, are appended to them.

1. FINAL LETTERS.

1. *E* is the principal *final* vowel in English words; and final *e* is always silent, except in a few monosyllables,—*me*, *we*, *he*, *she*; a few words in *ee*, as, *free*, *tree*, *refugee*; and a few terms of foreign origin, as *epitomè*, *synecdochè*.

2. All the consonants are used as *final* letters, with the exception of *j*, *q*, *v*, and *c* and *g* soft.

3. The final letter of a word is, in general, either a silent *e* or a consonant, according as the vowel contained in the final syllable of the word has or has not its long sound. Thus, *made*, *mad*; *mete*, *met*; *pine*, *pin*; *note*, *not*; *tube*, *tub*.

From this general principle, however, there are some deviations:—

(1.) The words *have*, *bade*, *are*, *were*, *give*, *come*, *one*, *done*, *love*, with some others, end in silent *e*, though the preceding vowels have not their long sound.

(2.) Words ending in the consonant *h* do not admit a silent *e* after them, though the preceding vowel be long,—except, sometimes, when preceded by *t*; as *bathe*, *swathe*, *tithe*, *clothe*.

(3.) Words ending in two different consonants do not, in general, admit a silent *e* after them, though the preceding vowel be long; as *night*, *bolt*, *host*: such words as *horde*, *bronze*, *change*, *haste*, &c., are exceptions.

4. Words whose final syllable contains a diphthong do not in general admit the silent *e* after them; as *faith*, *grief*,

heat, toil. The exceptions are such words as *believe, perceive, renounce, rejoice, &c.*

4. In *Monosyllables*, the final consonant is generally single, except in words ending in *f, l, or s*, preceded by a single vowel, which generally double the consonant.

Thus we write *rub, bud, frog, oh, ham, tin, nap, fur, pot, fox, phiz*, each with a single consonant; but we double the consonant in *staff, stiff, scoff, stuff; all, ell, hill, roll, skull; mass, less, hiss, toss, truss.*

The words in which this rule does not hold are chiefly the following: *—ebb, add, odd, egg, inn, err, purr, butt, buzz; and if, of; as, gas, has, was, yes, is, his, this, wis, us, thus.*

5. In *words of more than one syllable*, the final consonant is generally single, except in words ending in *f* or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, which double the consonant.

Thus we write *syllabub, cinnamon, sinister, &c.*; but we double the consonant in *distaff, mastiff, rebuff, harass, &c.*

6. The use of *c* hard as a final consonant is peculiar. It is used as a final letter only in words of more than one syllable, and in these only when preceded by *i*, or *ia*; as, *music, maniac*: in monosyllables, it is always accompanied by *k*; as *lack, deck, trick, lock, luck*, except *lac, zinc*.

2. AUGMENTS.

When words are increased by appending to them such additions as *s, ed, er, est, ing, able, ible, en, ish, ful, ous, ly, y, ment, ness, &c.*, they undergo changes, in certain cases, in their final letters; the change varying according as the final letter is a vowel or a consonant.

7. Words ending in silent *e*, upon assuming an augment, generally lose the *e*, if the augment begin with a vowel; but retain the *e*, if the augment begin with a consonant.

Thus, silent *e* is cut off before *able, ible, ing, ish, &c.*; as *cure, curable; sense, sensible; place, placing; slave, slavish*; but is retained before *ful, less, ly, ment, ness, &c.*; as *peaceful, guileless, closely, incitement, paleness.*

The principal deviations from this rule are in the cases of the augments *able* and *ous*. When silent *e* is preceded by *v*, or by *c* or *g* soft, the *e* is retained before *able*; as *moveable, peaceable, chargeable.*

When silent *e* is preceded by *g* soft, it is retained before *ous*; as,

courageous; and when preceded by *c* soft, it is changed into *i* before *ous*; as *grace, gracious.*

8. Words ending in *y*, preceded by a vowel, generally retain *y*, upon taking an augment; as *boy, boys, boyish; coy, coyly.* But words ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change the *y* into *i* before receiving an addition; as *fancy, fanciful; ready, readily*; except when the addition is *ing* or *ish* or *'s*; in both of which cases the *y* is retained; as, *carrying, babyish.*

Words ending in *ty*, upon assuming the affix *ous*, change *y* into *e*; as, *beauty, beautiful.*

9. Words which end in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, on receiving an augment beginning with a vowel, either double the final consonant, (or preserve it single,) according as the last syllable is or is not accented.

If the last syllable be accented, (or if the word be monosyllabic,) the consonant is doubled upon assuming an augment; as, *begin, beginner; glad, gladden.* But if the accent fall on any syllable except the last, (or if a diphthong precede the final consonant) the consonant is not doubled; as *offer, offering; defeat, defeated.**

The words *apparelled, cancelled, caviller, coralline, counsellor, crystalline, duellist, jeweller, levelling, libeller, revelling, rivalling, traveller*, are not spelt in accordance with this rule.

10. Words ending in a double consonant retain both consonants upon assuming the augment, whether the augment begin with a vowel or a consonant; except words in *ll*, which generally drop one *l* before taking an augment beginning with a consonant. Thus, *scoffer, oddity; fulness, chillness.*

3. COMPOUNDS, &c.

11. Compound words are generally written in the same way as the simple words which compose them. Thus, *herein, uphill, hereafter, recall, &c.*

* In some instances, the accent of a word is changed in order to admit the augment;—in which case, the accentuation of the augmented, not the original word, determines the spelling. Thus *confer, conference; refer, reference; prefer, preferable; métal, metallic; médal, medallion.* Overlooking this circumstance, some grammarians have thought it necessary to treat *conference, reference, preferable, metallic, medallion, &c.*, as if they were deviations from the ordinary rule.

But there are many deviations from this usage, especially among words which end in *ll*; as, *albeit*, *almighty*, *already*, *also*, *altogether*, *always*, *withal*, *butrush*, *fulfil*, *careful*, *handful*.

12. There are many English words which may be used with propriety in two different ways.

Thus, the words *connection* and *connexion*; *enquire*, *inquire*; *favour*, *favor*; *honour*, *honor*; *inflection*, *inflexion*; *negotiate*, *negociate*; &c., are used indiscriminately, by the best modern writers.

13. The deviations from analogy in English orthography are so numerous, that they can be fully acquired only by a practical acquaintance with the usages of the language.

The following are some of the most frequent:—

In adopting French words, it is the general usage of the language to change the French termination *tre* into *ter*; accordingly we write *chamber* and *charter*, instead of the French *chambre* and *chartre*; but we still retain *metre*, *nitre*, *sceptre*, *sepulchre*, *spectre*, and *theatre*.

We write *author* without *u*, but retain the *u* in *honour*.

Moveable and *immovable* are both established usages; so are *tameable* and *blamable*.

We write *equalize* with only one *l*, and *tranquillize* with two, though the primitive words *equal* and *tranquil* both end alike in one *l*.

Defence and *offence* are established usages; but their derivatives are *defensive* and *offensive*.

We write *exceed*, *proceed*, and *succeed*; but, though the Latin *cedo* be the root of all alike, we write *accede*, *recede*, *secede*.

EXERCISES ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

LETTERS.

Rectify the errors in the use of capital letters, in the following sentences:—

The Great phocion, one of the most celebrated personages among the Ancient grecians, was condemned to death by his ungrateful Countrymen; And, when about to drink the fatal Hemlock, was asked if he had any thing to say to his Son. "bring him before me," said He. "my Dear Son," said phocion, "i entreat you to serve your country with as much Fidelity as I have done, And, above all, to forget that an unjust death was the Price with which She recompensed My services."

EXERCISES ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

he dies! The Friend of Sinners dies!
lo! salem's Daughters weep around;
A solemn Darkness veils the skies;
a sudden trembling shakes the ground.
say, "live for ever, Glorious king!
born to Redeem, and Strong to save!"
Then ask the Monster, "where's thy Sting?
And Where's thy Victory, boasting grave?"

SYLLABLES.

Divide the following words into syllables:—

Abjure, ancient, arrogant, ashes, bluster, capricious, cherish, coalition, coeval, conviction, debase, delicious, efficacious, ferocious, filter, filtration, gardener, impregnable, intrepid, judicial, momentary, musician, nuncio, onion, optical, perversity, quaternion, reverential, society, solidity, tergiversation, transient, unanimity, union, verisimilitude, worshipped, yellowish, zany.

SPELLING.

Correct the false spelling in the following words, by introducing the silent consonants that are omitted.

Dout, dum, clim, com, crum, lam, lim, num, sutle.
Asend, desent, musle, sene, sience, septrè, zarina.
Hankerchief, hansel, grounsel.
Benin, desin, ensin, forein, nash, poinant.
Agast, onest, rapsody, reumatism, rubarb, Tames, Tomas.

Explain why each of the following words has a silent e as the final letter.
(See Rules 1, 2, 3):—

Alpine, blade, cone, divine, fete, guide, hue, pique.
Grotesque, festive, passive, precipice, courage.
Come, done, give, have, more, were, lathe, tithe.

Correct the false spelling in the following sentences, (see Rules 4 and 5):—

The trees budd, the bees humm, and the fishes leap in the nett; let us al hasten to fil our pitchers with thiss water before the eb of the tid.
You cannot place too much stres upon learning to spel properly.
Time is like a river stil appearing to pas away, yet stil coming onn.
Thiss strangerr hass been able to amas wealth, though he came to our country with only his staf in his hand.
Unroll that mapp, that I may follow the course of the canall untill it fal into the sea. Now hold it til I pas my finger along its course.

Correct the spelling of the following words, (see Rule 6) :—

Attac, ecclesiastick, logick, musick, napsac, schismatick, sic, terrifick, trac, zinck, zodiack.

Affix the augments ing, ed, to the following words, (see Rules 7 & 8) :—

Amplify, amuse, analyze, annoy, behave, calumniate, charge, defy, dedicate, destroy, efface, flay, fortify, humble, menace, rejoice.

Affix to the following words such of the augments, able, ible, en, ish, ful, ous, ly, y, ment, ness, &c., as their signification will allow them to take, (see Rules 7 & 8) :—

Able, acknowledge, allege, allow, allay, ample, appellative, battle, beauty, blaspheme, body, bone, branchy, busy, cognosce, commence, cure, dandy, deduce, deface, duty, drone, elope, envy, force, fury, godly, grace, knave, ignoble, issue, joy, judge, measure, pity, plenty, space, lame, usury, white.

Affix to the following words ed, er, ing, or such other of the augments as they will admit, (see Rules 9 & 10) :—

Assess, annul, aver, begin, ca'per, cavil, decrep'it, entrap, jew'el, inhab'it, intermit, li'bel, permit, rebel, refer, spir'it, transfer, trepan, vis'it.

Correct the false spelling in the following sentences, applying the rules :—

A wis man is never les alon than when alone.

The finn of a fish is, as it wer, the limb by which he balances his body.

Modesty in youth is better than comelyness; and diligence than a plaiful fancy.

By defering repentance, we become the destroi'ers of our own happyness.

Cultivate sedatness of manner; be servicable to others; live harmlesly; avoid wilful evill; be always obligeing: These qualiys are all truely desirable.

A favorr confered with delicacy doubles the obligation.

But, O! how alterred was its sprightlyer tone

When Cheerfullness, a nymph of healthiest hue,

Her bow across her shoulders flung,

Her buskins gemed with mornning dew,

Blew an inspireing air, that dal and thickett rung;

The hunters' call, to Fawn and Dryad known!

CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

As the lark with varied tun
Carolls to the evening loud,
Mark the mild resplendent moon
Breakking through a parted cloud.
Linnets with unnumbered notes,
And the cuckoo bird with two,
Tuneing sweet their mellow throates,
Bidd the setting sun adieu!

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

31. Etymology treats of the *Classification*, the *Inflection*, and the *Derivation* of words.

I. CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

32. The words of the English language are divided into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

33. The names of these parts of speech are, *Noun*, *Article*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

NOUN.

34. A Noun is a word which is simply the name of an object; as, *boy*, *school*, *lesson*, *obedience*.

35. There are two kinds of Nouns, *Proper* and *Common*.

36. *Proper Nouns* denote the names of individuals only; as, *John*, *Philadelphia*.

37. *Common Nouns* denote a whole kind or species; as *man*, *city*.

38. Proper nouns are used to distinguish individuals from the rest of the species. Common nouns are applicable to any individual of that species.

31. Of what does Etymology treat? 32. How are the words of the English language classified? 33. Name the parts of speech. 34. What is a noun? 35. How many kinds of nouns are there? 36. What are proper nouns? What are common nouns? 38. How are proper nouns

39. Proper nouns are classed as common nouns when they are employed to describe more than one individual. Thus, "the Howards," the "Stuarts," being descriptive of classes of individuals, may be considered as common nouns. It is the same in such expressions as "He is the Cicero of the age;" "he is a Hercules."

40. The names of qualities, conceived as existing apart from the substances to which they belong, are called *Abstract Nouns*; as, *hardness, gentleness*.

ARTICLE.

41. An article is a word which is used to limit the signification of nouns.

42. The words *a* or *an*, and *the*, are the only articles in the English language.

43. *A* and *an* were originally *ae* and *ane*, and were probably used at first simply to convey the idea of unity; as *ae* man, *ane* ox. They still express the idea of unity; but less emphatically than when they were written after the ancient fashion.

44. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite Article; and *the* the definite Article.

ADJECTIVE.

45. An Adjective is a word which qualifies a noun; as *good, tall*.

46. An adjective expresses the quality of a noun not simply, but as conjoined with the noun; and is therefore never used without a noun being either expressed or understood.

47. Thus, *tallness, goodness, greatness*, and the like, which express properties or qualities simply, are not adjectives, but *abstract nouns*; though *tall, good, and great*, which qualify nouns, and cannot be used without them, either expressed or implied, are *adjectives*.

used? 39. When are they classed as common nouns? 40. What is an article? 41. What the only articles in the English language? 42. What were *a* and *an* originally? 43. Distinguish the definite from the indefinite article. 44. What is an adjective? 45. How does it express the quality of a noun? 46. Give examples. 47. How are

It is probable that all adjectives were originally nouns; and it sometimes happens that nouns are used in our language as adjectives; as *gold ring, coal fire, sea water, ship stores*.

Among the words used both as adjectives and nouns are *Christian, cold, cunning, divine, evil, liquid, missionary, original, private, ritual*.

48. Adjectives are divided into two classes: *Adjectives denoting quality*, and *Adjectives denoting number*.

49. Adjectives denoting quality are such as *good, bad, large, great*.

50. Adjectives denoting number are called *Numeral Adjectives*. They are divided into two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*.

51. The *Cardinals* are those which simplify or denote number; as *one, two, three*.

52. The *Ordinals* are those which denote order, or number in succession; as *first, second, third*.

PRONOUN.

53. A Pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun; as *it, which*.

Thus in the sentence, "John said to his brother, *I* request *you* to walk to the city, and bring *me* the book which I ordered," *I, me, you, and which*, are pronouns or relative words, which refer to the words "John," brother," and "book" respectively, and supply their place.

54. The word to which a pronoun refers is called the *Correlative* or *Antecedent*.

This correlative is always either a noun, a word, or words equivalent in signification to a noun.

55. Pronouns are divided into *Personal, Relative, and Adjective*.

56. The *Personal* Pronouns are *I, thou, he, she, and it*; and their plurals *we, ye or you, and they*.

adjectives divided? 49. Give examples of adjectives denoting quality. 50. What are adjectives denoting number called? 51. How are they divided? 52. Give examples of cardinals.—53. Of ordinals. 54. What is a pronoun? Give me an example. 55. What is meant by the correlative or antecedent of a pronoun? What must it be? 56. How are pronouns divided? 57. Which are the Personal Pronouns? Which is

I is called the pronoun of the *first* person, which is the person speaking.

Thou, the pronoun of the *second* person, denotes the person spoken to or addressed.

He and *she* are pronouns of the *third* person, denoting the person spoken of.

It, a pronoun of the *third* person, denotes the thing spoken of.

57. The Relative Pronouns are, *who*, *which*, *that*, *as*.

They are so called, because their reference to their *correlative* is generally more direct and immediate than that of the other pronouns.

Thus, in the sentence, "The scholar *who* disobeys the master deserves punishment," the reference of *who* to *scholar* is so obvious and immediate that the correlative cannot be mistaken.

Who is applied to persons; *which*, to inanimate things; *that* and *as*, indiscriminately to persons and things; *as*, has generally the word *such* for its correlative.

What and *whether* are Compound Relatives, *what* being equivalent to *that which*, or *thou which*; *whether* denoting which of the two.

Whoever and *whatever* are simply the relatives *who* and *what*, with the affix *ever* added, in order to render their application indefinite.

Who, *which*, and *what*, when used to ask a question, are commonly called *Interrogative Pronouns*.

58. The Adjective Pronouns are divided into three kinds, viz: *Demonstrative*, *Distributive*, and *Indefinite*.

The *Demonstrative Pronouns* are *this*, *that*, and their plurals, *these*, *those*. They are used to point out emphatically the objects to which they refer.

The *Distributive Pronouns* are, *each*, *every*, *either*, and *neither*. They denote the persons or things which make up a number, as taken separately or distributively.

The *Indefinite Pronouns* are *some*, *other*, *another*, *any*, and *such*. *Another* is *other* with the indefinite article *an* prefixed.

VERB.

59. A *Verb* is a word which affirms or asserts; as, *strikes*, *walks*, *is*.

the pronoun of the first person? — The second? — The third? 57. Which are the relative pronouns? Why are they so called? Give an example. To what is *who* applied? Which are the compound relatives? What is the effect of *ever* at the end of *who* and *what*? When are *who* and *what* called *Interrogative Pronouns*? 58. How are the Adjective pronouns divided? Which are *Demonstrative*? — *Distributive*? — *Indefinite*? 59. What is a verb? Give an example. 60.

Thus, in the sentences "John *walks*;" "James *strikes* the table;" "The boy *is* idle;" *walks*, *strikes*, and *is* are verbs.

60. As the noun is the word in a sentence which names the thing about which we speak, so the verb is the word which asserts or declares what we say concerning it.

61. Verbs are divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

62. *Transitive Verbs* denote that kind of action which passes from the agent to something else.

63. *Intransitive Verbs* denote that kind of action or state of being which is limited to the agent or subject.

Thus *beat*, *love*, *kill*, are *transitive verbs*, as expressing a kind of action by which the agent affects something besides himself. *Sit*, *sleep*, *stand*, are *intransitive verbs*, as denoting simple being, or action limited to the subject or agent.

In dictionaries, the words *active* and *neuter* are invariably used to distinguish the *transitive* and *intransitive verbs*. It is customary in grammars to use the terms *transitive* and *intransitive*, partly because they are considered more accurate and expressive; and partly because the word *active* is used in grammars, in opposition to the word *passive*. The distinction between these two words will be considered in that part of this work which treats of the inflections of verbs. In the mean time, the pupil will suffer no inconvenience by using the word *active* as synonymous with *transitive*, and *neuter* as synonymous with *intransitive*. The uniform practice in dictionaries and in general literature has authorised such a use of the words.

ADVERB.

64. An Adverb is a word which qualifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, "He reads *well*; she is *very* gentle; I will go *most willingly*."

65. Adverbs seem to perform the same office to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, that adjectives perform to nouns.

Thus, in the sentence "Cicero was *eloquent*," the term *eloquent*, being a word used to modify the noun Cicero, is an *adjective*; but in the sentence "Cicero was *exceedingly* eloquent," the term *exceedingly*, being a word used to modify the adjective *eloquent*, is an *adverb*. In

Explain the office of the verb. 61. How are verbs divided? 62. What are Transitive Verbs? 63. What are Intransitive Verbs? Give examples. How are the terms active and neuter used in dictionaries? 64. What is an Adverb? 65. How is it used? Give examples. 66. What does

like manner, in the sentence "Cæsar fought *bravely*," "*bravely*," as modifying the verb "*fought*," is an adverb.

66. The adverb serves merely to express in one word what may always be expressed by two or more words. Thus, had we not possessed such words as *here, there thither, eloquently*, we could have expressed the ideas conveyed by them, by using the equivalent phrases, *in this place, in that place, to that place, in an eloquent manner*.

PREPOSITION.

67. A *Preposition* is a word used to show the relation which one thing bears to another; as, "Death entered *into* the world *by* sin."

Prepositions are so called from their being generally put before other words.

68. The Prepositions in most common use are,—*About, above, across, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, around, at, before, behind, below, beneath, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, but, by, down, except, for, from, in, into, near, nigh, of, off, on, out, over, round, save, through, throughout, to, towards, under, underneath, up, upon, with, within, without*.

69. A number of prepositions which are of great use in modifying the words to which they are prefixed, are called *inseparable prepositions*, from their never being used but as parts of other words. Such are, *a, be, con, mis, pre, re, sub*; as in *afoot, befall, conjoin, mishap, prefix, regain, subtract, &c.*

CONJUNCTION.

70. A *Conjunction* is a word used to connect words and sentences.

71. The Conjunctions in most general use are, *and, also, either, or; neither, nor; though, yet, but, however; for, that; because, since; therefore, wherefore, then; if, unless, lest*.

an adverb express? 67. What is a Preposition? Why so called? 69. Which are the prepositions in most common use? 70. What is a conjunction? 71. Which are the conjunctions in most common use?

INTERJECTION.

72. An *Interjection* is a word used to express sudden emotion.

They are so called, because they are generally thrown in between the parts of a sentence without any reference to the structure of the other parts of it.

73. The following are the chief Interjections:—*Ah, alas; pshaw, fie; ha, ha, ha; lo, hush, huzza, O, oh, heigho*.

Some verbs, nouns and adjectives, uttered by way of exclamation, in a detached manner, are classed among interjections: as, *hail! welcome! strange!*

74. The learner will perceive, by the above classification of the words of our language, that the Noun is the principal part of speech; that it is the only one which expresses a distinct idea without the help of any other word; and that all the other parts of speech are employed to denote the actions, qualities, and relations of the Noun. The whole subject might be familiarly treated thus. *Nouns* are the names of persons or things; *adjectives* express the qualities of those persons or things; *verbs* express their actions; *adverbs*, the modifications of those qualities or actions; *prepositions* express the relations of nouns, and *conjunctions*, their connections. *Pronouns* supply the places of nouns, to avoid the inconvenience of repeating them too frequently; *Articles* limit their signification; and finally, *Interjections* express the sudden emotions of persons, of whom the names are nouns. Thus, all the other parts of speech have a direct relation to the noun; and derive all their importance from this relation. By keeping this important fact constantly in view, the pupil will find the task of understanding grammar greatly simplified. Even in performing the following exercises on the classification of words, he will frequently be enabled to determine, without hesitation, what part of speech

72. What is an Interjection? Why so called? 73. Which are the chief interjections? Give examples of other parts of speech occasionally used as interjections. 74. Which is the principal part of speech? Describe the offices of the other parts of speech with relation to the noun. How may you distinguish the parts of speech? What gives law to

any word is, by inquiring how it stands related to the noun.

Some words, from the different ways in which they are used, belong sometimes to one part of speech, sometimes to another.*

The same word must originally have been, both in import and use, only one part of speech. Present usage, however, gives laws to grammar, not original import.

The chief words, which belong sometimes to one part of speech, sometimes to another, are, *as*, *but*, *either*, *neither*, *much*, *more*, *most*, *that*.

As is used both as a relative pronoun and as an adverb. Thus, "Only such punishment is inflicted *as* serves the end of government." "*As* great *as* Cæsar."

But is used both as a preposition and conjunction. Thus, "Nothing *but* religion can give true peace." "John lives in London; *but* James resides in Edinburgh."

Either and *neither* are used both as adjectives of number and as conjunctions. Thus, "Of these two books I will take *either*." "*Either* speak truth or keep silence."

Much, *more*, and *most*, are used both as adjectives and adverbs. Thus, "In *most* towns *much* money has been collected, but *more* ought to have been collected for so good a purpose." "*Most* certainly; but I am *much* gratified with what I have got, the *more* so as I did not expect it."

* The following simple directions have been given for enabling the pupil to distinguish the principal parts of speech; though it is better when he is able to distinguish them by a knowledge of their discriminating properties without the help of rules:—

A word that can properly be added to the phrase, *I am thinking of*, or *I am thinking of the*, is a *Noun*.

A word that will take the noun *thing* or *things* after it, is an *Adjective of quality*.

A word that will take before it, the pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, or *we*, is a *Verb*.

Words that answer to the questions *how*? *how much*? *when*? or *where*? joined to a verb or an adjective, are *Adverbs*.

Prepositions may be distinguished from conjunctions by their admitting after them the words *me*, *us*, *him*, *them*, &c.

grammar? What are the chief words which belong sometimes to one part of speech, sometimes to another? What is said of *as*?—*but*?—*either*, and *neither*?—*much*, *more*, and *most*?—*that*? How do you distinguish a *Noun*?—An adjective of quality?—A *Verb*?—An *Adverb*?—A *Preposition*?

That is used as a demonstrative pronoun, a relative pronoun, and a conjunction. Thus, "I will thank you for *that* book." "I will thank you for the book *that* is beside you." "I beg *that* you will hand me the book."

EXERCISES ON THE CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

1. THE NOUN.—Give instances of words which belong to the class *Nouns*.

Distinguish between Common and Proper Nouns in the following sentences:—

London is the chief city of Britain.

The first king of Israel was Saul, the son of Kish.

The children of Israel left Egypt under the guidance of Moses: they received the law at Mount Sinai, and sojourned forty years in the wilderness of Arabia. Joshua was their conductor across the river Jordan into Canaan, the promised land.

The first twelve emperors of Rome are distinguished by the name of Cæsars. The first of them was Julius Cæsar, a man equally illustrious as a general, a historian, and an orator. He was alike the Alexander, the Demosthenes, and the Xenophon of his age.

2. THE ADJECTIVES.—Distinguish between *Nouns* and *Adjectives* in the following sentences:—

Diligent scholars learn rapidly.

Obedient children are dear to their parents.

Verdant fields appear at a distance.

Flowers beautiful and fragrant were offered to her.

King Alfred was good and great.

The river is deep, dark, and rapid.

Distinguish between Abstract Nouns and Adjectives in the following sentences:—

Happy are merciful men, for they shall obtain mercy.

The meekness of Moses, the patience of Job, and the wisdom of Solomon, have been celebrated in every age. We should be meek, and wise, and patient, like them.

In warm weather, we complain of warmth; in cold weather, we complain of coldness.

The external elegance of that mansion is surpassed by the elegant nature of its internal arrangements.

There have been many excellent and generous men; but how rare is such generosity and excellence as Howard displayed!

Distinguish when the following words, Christian, cunning, evil, good, missionary, divine, original, are Nouns, and when Adjectives, in the following instances :—

The Christian religion is little understood by many a man who calls himself a Christian.

The enemy was cunning; but his cunning was nothing to that of our commander.

How can ye that are evil do good? but, alas! good men often do evil. He went out as a missionary to the heathen; but he had little of the missionary spirit:—a great divine, he had little of the divine spirit either of the original missionaries, or of the great Original of our holy faith.

3. THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVE.—*Distinguish Nouns, Adjectives denoting quality, and Adjectives of number, in the following sentences :—*

A good boy loves his book.

An open countenance inspires confidence.

The Forth, the Tay, the Tweed, and the Clyde, are the four principal rivers of Scotland.

Many a flower is born to blush unseen. That new palace is not so picturesque as this old castle.

Some of the greatest personages of antiquity were men of one virtue and a thousand crimes.

The parrot is a foreign bird, of beautiful plumage. It can be taught to pronounce a great many words and even sentences. But all its agreeable qualities are counterbalanced by that inclination which it has to gnaw and destroy every thing you put within its reach. This bird is found in flocks in the woods of several warm countries. It makes a nest in any hollow tree which it can find, and it lays but few eggs, commonly only two or three.

4. THE PRONOUN.—*What do the Pronouns he, she, his, her, it, and they, refer to respectively in the following sentences?*

The huntsman wished his dogs to take the water. At first they refused: but at last they crossed it, he following on horseback.

The street was originally named after a lady of rank; but, as she did not choose that it should bear her name, the name was changed into that of a famous general: he, however, was never consulted in the matter.

Point out the Antecedents or Correlatives of who, which, that, and as, in the following sentences.

The bark which is stripped from the oak is used in tanning leather. Some oaks are said to be older than the oldest man that ever lived. The fruit which grows upon this tree is called an acorn. There are men in some countries who eat acorns. In this country, the only animals that now feed on them are pigs and poultry; though such men as originally peopled Britain were glad to use them.

Supply the blanks in the following passages with Relative Pronouns, distinguishing when who, and when which, ought to be used.

The fuel is most commonly used in the British Islands is coal. It is dug out of deep pits in the earth by men are called miners. Long ago, the foul air collects under ground used sometimes to be set on fire by the lamps of the miners, and to blow up, to the great hazard of the lives of all were in the mine; but this has seldom occurred since the celebrated Sir Humphry Davy devoted much attention to the subject, found out a kind of gauze keeps in the flame, and prevents it from igniting the foul air.

Supply the blanks in the following story with appropriate Pronouns :—

Three friends entered into partnership; Charles gave the shop as contribution to general stock; David agreed to manage the business; thus giving time and talents as contribution; Edward advanced the money to buy goods for filling. After carrying on the business for some time in a manner that reflected credit on the manager, and brought gain to all, suddenly lost both shop and goods by a fire that broke out in neighbourhood; and it came to be a question among the partners which of had incurred the greatest loss. "We have all lost equally," argued David, "for each contributed equally to general stock, and all is gone." "Not at all," replied Charles; "I have lost shop, certainly; and Edward has lost money; but, David, have lost only your time: talents for management, formed the other part of your contribution, still remain unimpaired; nay, are improved by the exercise they have received in conducting business. You are, therefore, not to be considered as a loser to the same extent as Edward and have been, but rather as one is a debtor to the firm." It is for the ingenious reader to determine which of the parties had the advantage in this argument.

5. THE VERB.—*Distinguish Nouns, Adjectives denoting quality, Adjectives of number, Pronouns, and Verbs, in the following sentences :—*

John is a tall boy : he has three sisters.

Our master strikes the table three times.

That horse gallops at the rate of twelve miles an hour.

The sun sets.

Our hearts are deceitful.

The diligent scholar surpasses his competitors, and stands leader in his class.

An idle boy grieves his teacher, disappoints his parents, and ruins himself.

I love my parents, my preceptor, and my lesson : you are idle ; you neglect your duty ; you deserve punishment.

Distinguish Verbs from Adjectives in the following sentences :—

The meadows are joyful : the little hills rejoice.

The shadows of the long night lengthen about us.

We mourn at the mournful tidings.

The whole family are sad : their sadness saddens us.

Distinguish between Transitive and Intransitive Verbs in the following instances :—

Afflict, arise, begin, beg, bite, bleed, cleave, creep, drink, eat, fall, fly, go, grow, hang, hear, know, lie, ride, ring, rive, run, scatter, seek, sell, shave, shine, sink, smite, stride, strew, swim, take, tear, think, throw, walk, wax, weave, weep, win, word, write.

In the following sentences, distinguish when the word in italics is a Noun, when an Adjective, and when a Verb.

Thy friends are in the garden : they *walk* from *walk* to *walk*.

So great is the *heat* given out by the burning pines, that they *heat* the whole surrounding air.

The *fight* still continues : they breathed a little, but now they *fight* again.

So rich and fragrant, the poets tell us, is the *smell* of the spicy fields of Arabia Felix, that the mariners who navigate the coast *smell* them far out at sea.

This *damp* night might be expected to cast a *damp* over us ; yet we *damp* not our ardour. A *calm* has succeeded the storm, and again the ocean is *calm*. It is proper that we *calm* our fears also.

If you *labour* diligently you will not lose your *labour*.

They *hope* to gain wealth, and the *hope* of gain sweetens labour.

They are of humble *rank*, but they *rank* high in the estimation of their fellows. This flower is *rank*.

He should *moderate* his wishes, and be content with *moderate* gains.

6. ADVERBS.—*In each of the following sentences there is an Adverb : point it out ; and state, in each case, which part of speech it qualifies, whether an Adjective, Verb, or other Adverb.*

The master twice corrected John.

Your lesson is not sufficiently prepared.

The boy who lately entered school is now at the head of his class.

You act foolishly ; your conduct is truly mournful.

That story is not true.

That is not very wisely said ; you certainly deserve punishment.

This is too bad ; such misconduct will very speedily find you out.

7.—*Sentences in which all parts of speech occur, to be parsed with reference to the classification of the words.*

God bestowed on man the faculty of speech for great and important purposes : but, alas ! we frequently pervert it to the worst purposes.

Alexander the Great had a high esteem for knowledge and learning.

He used to say, "He was more obliged to Aristotle, his tutor, for his learning, than to Philip, his father, for his life !" O what a pity he devoted his life so little to the learning he so greatly loved !

The tongue of the slanderer is a fire which blackens whatever it touches—which directs its fury on the good grain equally as on the chaff,—which, wherever it rages, produces nothing but devastation and ruin. O how vile a character is the slanderer ! The tongue is an inestimable blessing ; but he perverts and prostitutes it.

Words descriptive of natural sounds generally bear some resemblance in their sound to what they represent. We call a certain bird the cuckoo, from the sound which it emits. We say of the wind, at one time, that it whistles, at another, it roars. We say of serpents, they hiss ; of flies, they buzz ; of falling timber, it crashes. Of the stream we say, it flows ; of the hail, it rattles. In all which instances there is obviously a manifest resemblance between the word and the thing signified.

At noontide hour

The imprison'd inmates of the school rush forth,
And sport the happy interval away.

Upon the sward they gaily spread their stores,
And, happy ! feed upon the simple fare.

In midst of them poor Redbreast hops unharm'd,
For they have read, or heard, and wept to hear
The story of the Children in the Wood,
And many a crumb to Robin now they throw.

O Caledonia! stern and wild,
Meet nurse for a poetic child!
Land of brown heath and shaggy wood,
Land of the mountain and the flood,
Land of my sires! what mortal hand
Can e'er untie the filial band
That knits me to thy rugged strand!

8. *Instances of the same word used as different parts of speech.*

My book is *as* good, *as* large, and *as* carefully kept, *as* any in the school. It is *such as* the master is sure to approve.

Many men are obliged to be content with such accommodations *as* they can get, not *such as* they wish.

He hath not grieved me *but* in part. He has injured nothing belonging to me *but* the basket; *but* he has destroyed the whole of your fishing-tackle.

I will take *either* road at your pleasure. *Either* you or I must do it.

Do you say that *neither* is attentive? *neither* the boy nor the girl?

I cannot go beyond the word of the Lord, to do *less* or *more*.

As the sun sinks, the stars appear *more* and *more*; *but more* stars are invisible than all that yet appear.

He will love *most* who has *most* forgiven.

Read *that* book again.

Read the book *that* I gave you.

Read *that* book, *that* you may become wise.

I tell you *that* that man is innocent.

Blessed is the man *that* considereth the poor.

Eat *that* you may live, and live *that* you may do good.

Forgive us our trespass, *as* we forgive them that trespass against us.

That you should have reason to mourn, is grievous to me.

That star *that* shines above us, for *as* little *as* it seems to be, is larger than *either* the moon or the earth: it is *but* a sparkling diamond in apparent magnitude; *but* in real magnitude, and probably, also, in use, it is a world.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

The inconvenience which I have suffered in giving instruction in rhetoric and composition to such of my pupils as have never been much accustomed to write grammatical exercises, has induced me, in preparing this work, to furnish a large number of exercises to be written. To render these exercises as easy and agreeable as possible, I resort to the use of pictures. The aid which these pleasing objects give the pupil, by suggesting ideas to his mind, has been rendered so apparent to me, by the use of the little volume entitled "Easy Exercises in Composition," that I am fully convinced of the propriety of using them, not only in the scholar's first attempts at composing themes, but in the more simple process of writing grammatical exercises. This is the only apology which I deem it necessary to offer to my brethren and friends, the instructors of youth, for so extraordinary a proceeding as the introduction of pictures into a practical treatise of English Grammar.

75. As the exercises to be written by the pupil should be not merely detached words or phrases, but complete sentences, it is necessary here to explain what is meant by a *sentence*.

76. A sentence is a collection of words so arranged as to form a complete proposition. In order to form a complete proposition, it is necessary, in the first place, to have a *subject*, or, in other words, *something to speak or write about*; and, in the next place, to speak or write something about that *subject*. The *subject*, therefore, is that concerning which something is spoken or written. That which is spoken or written concerning the *subject* is called the *predicate*.

Thus, the phrase "A good boy," does not constitute a complete sentence, because it contains no predicate; but the expression, "A good boy loves his book," constitutes a complete sentence, because it contains both a subject and a predicate.

77. The *subject*, being a *thing*, must, necessarily, be expressed by a noun, or a word or words equivalent in signification to a noun. Thus, in the sentence above, the words "A good boy," form the *subject*.

78. The *predicate* must always be a verb, or a clause containing a verb, and equal in amount to a verb. Thus, in the sentence above, "loves his book," is the *predicate*.

76. What is a sentence? What is necessary to form a complete proposition? What is meant by the term *Subject*?—By *Predicate*? Give examples of an imperfect and a perfect sentence. 77. What must the *Subject* be?—78. The *Predicate*? 79. How may a sentence be rendered imperfect?

79. A sentence is imperfect when it contains a word which implies that an additional clause is required to complete the sense.

By examining the following sentences and parts of sentences with reference to their explanation, and pointing out which among them are complete, and which are not, the pupil will readily learn to distinguish between them, and to apply the distinction in writing grammatical exercises.

A great hero. A great hero is not always a good man. The boy who studies. The boy who studies diligently. The boy who studies diligently may hope to become a good scholar. A house built of stone. The house is built of stone. When Washington arrived. When Washington arrived, the enemy retreated. The days being short. The days being short, afforded little time for amusement.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN BY THE PUPIL.

[In writing the following exercises, the pupil is not required to confine himself to the parts of speech enumerated under each, but he may use others also.]

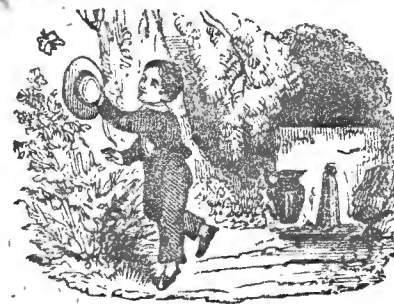


Evening Sport.

Write a number of short sentences, the ideas being suggested by the above picture, the words employed including *nouns*, *articles*, and *verbs*.

MODEL.

The boy plays. The father observes. The mother smiles. The sister enjoys the sport. A pipe lies on the table. The sister leans on the table.



Chasing a Butterfly.

Write sentences relating to the objects in this picture, introducing *nouns*, *articles*, *adjectives*, and *verbs*.



The hand-organ Player.

Write sentences relating to this picture, including *nouns*, *articles*, *adjectives*, *verbs*, and *pronouns*.



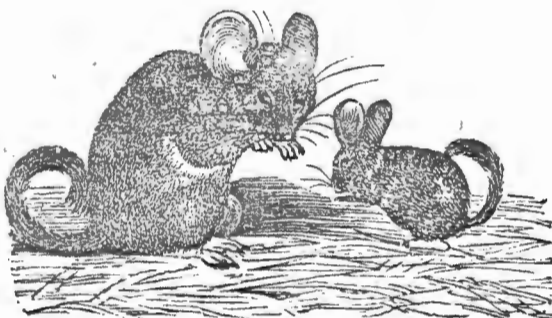
Autumn.

Write sentences relating to this picture, including *nouns*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *prepositions*.



The Cottage Girl.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, adjectives, and conjunctions.*



Chinchillas.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, adjectives, articles, and interjections.*



Playing with the Parrot and the Dog.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adjective pronouns.*



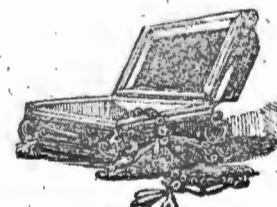
A Ride.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, adjectives, and relative pronouns.*



The Village Inn.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adjective pronouns.*



The Casket.

Write sentences including all the different parts of speech, some being introduced in one sentence and some in another.

FROM THE LATIN.

Animalculum....	animalcula.	Genus	genera.
Apex	apices.	Ignis-fatuus	ignes-fatui.
Appendix	appendices.	Lamina	laminae.
Arcanum	arcana.	Magus	magi.
Axis	axes.	Medium	medii.
Calx	calces.	Memorandum	memoranda.
Datum	data.	Radius	radii.
Desideratum	desiderata.	Stimulus	stimuli.
Effluvium	effluvia.	Stratum	strata.
Erratum	errata.	Vertex	vertices.
Focus	foci.	Vortex	vortices.

FROM THE HEBREW.

Cherub	Cherubim.*	Seraph	Seraphim.
--------------	------------	--------------	-----------

FROM THE FRENCH.

Beau	beaux.	Monsieur	messieurs.
------------	--------	----------------	------------

FROM THE ITALIAN.

Bandit }	banditti.	Dilettante	dilettanti.
Banditto }		Virtuoso	virtuosi.

6. Some nouns are entirely anomalous in the formation of their plurals; thus,—

Foot	feet.	Cow	kine.†
Goose	geese.	Sow	swine.
Louse	lice.	Tooth	teeth.
Mouse	mice.		

7. Some nouns are used alike in both numbers; as, *deer, horse, sheep, swine*.

Proper names have necessarily no plural; but there are also some common names which want the plural. Of this kind are names of grains; as, *rye, wheat*; names of metals; as, *iron, gold*; names of

* "*Cherubim* and *Seraphim* are real Hebrew plurals; but such is the propensity in men to form regular inflections in language, that these words are used in the singular, with regular plurals, *cherubims, seraphims*. In like manner, the Hebrew singulars, *cherub* and *seraph*, have obtained regular plurals." — WEBSTER.

† If *kine* was originally *cowen*, and *swine, sowen*, which their sound would seem to render not improbable, they belong to exception 3d, rather than to exception 6th.

Give examples from the Latin—the Hebrew—the French—the Italian.
(6) Give examples of anomalies. — (7) Of nouns used in both numbers.

fossils; as, *marl, clay*; and names of abstract and moral qualities; as, *gravity, benevolence*.*

There are some common nouns, on the other hand, which have no singular; for example, nouns expressive of what nature or art has made double; as, *scissors, snuffers*; and nouns descriptive of objects which are not easily conceived without a reference to a plurality of parts; as, *annals, archives, vespers*.

There are also some nouns having a plural termination, which, from their being expressive of either unity or plurality, admit of being used in either number, according to the view of their meaning present to the mind of the writer or speaker, when he employs them.

The following are those most commonly used:—

Alms,	Hydrostatics,	Metaphysics,	Pneumatics,
Amends,	Hysterics,	News,	Politics,
Billiards,	Mathematics,	Odds,	Riches,
Economics,	Means,	Optics,	Statistics,
Ethics,	Measles,	Pains,	Tactics.
Hydraulics,	Mechanics,	Physics,	

II. GENDER.

88. There are three Genders, the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

89. The *masculine* distinguishes male animals; the *feminine*, females; the *neuter*, things destitute of sex.

As there are only two sexes, there ought to be but two genders, — the *masculine* and the *feminine*. But it has been found convenient to add a third, the *neuter*.† This word signifies *neither*, and there-

* It is to be observed, however, that nouns of the above classes take a plural to express *varieties* of the substances denoted by them. Thus, we can say, *wheats, golds, clays, gravities*, when we wish to describe different kinds of wheat, &c.

† All things inanimate are considered as neuter, except in cases where, by an easy analogy, the imagination conceives of them as animated, and assigns sex to them. This mode of giving life and sex to things inanimate, is nearly peculiar to our language, and forms one of its striking beauties. But it is not easy to reduce the usage of the language, on this point, to fixed rules. Indeed, fancy, more than nature or reason, may be traced in the regulation of the matter; and the same object may be found described as sometimes of one gender, and sometimes of another. The nearest approach to uniformity of usage is in the words, *sun, death, time*, and names of great rivers, which take the *masculine*; and in the words, *moon, morn, ship, earth*, which take the *feminine* gender.

What remark is made on proper nouns?—On some common nouns?—On nouns used in either number? Give examples. 88. How many genders

fore intimates that the objects to which it is applied are neither of the masculine nor of the feminine gender.

The English is almost the only language which, in the distribution of Gender, follows the order of nature.

90. Some nouns, which are applicable to either sex, are said to be of the *common* gender; * *as, parent, cousin.*

91. There are three modes of distinguishing sex.

92. (1.) Distinction of sex is most commonly expressed by a change of termination to denote the feminine gender.

93. The feminine terminations most frequently used, are, *ess, ix, a, ina, and ine.*

Originally, the termination *ess* was simply added to the masculine; but, latterly, the feminine, thus formed, has, for convenience of utterance, been variously contracted.

The following words still retain the *whole* masculine:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Author	authoress.	Mayor	mayoress.
Baron	baroness.	Patron	patroness.
Count	countess.	Peer	peeress.
Dauphin	dauphiness.	Poet	poetess.
Deacon	deaconess.	Priest	priestess.
Giant	giantess.	Prior	prioresse.
Heir	heiress.	Prophet	prophetess.
Host	hostess.	Shepherd	shepherdess.
Jew	Jewess.	Tutor	tutress.
Lion	lioness.	Viscount	viscountess.

The following have undergone contraction:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Abbott	abbess.†	Adulterer	adultriss.
Actor	actress.	Ambassador	ambassadress.

* The appellation "*common*" gender is sufficiently descriptive of such a word as *parents* (in the plural), which necessarily includes both the masculine and the feminine. But for the singular, *parent*, and for such words as *cousin*, &c., "*either*" gender would be a more correct appellation.

† These feminines must have been, originally, *abbotess, actress, adulteress, &c.* *Duchess*, and *marchioness*, have not been formed from *duke*, and *marquis*, but from *duch* and *marchion*.

are there? 89. How are the genders distinguished? What is said of the English language? 90. What is meant by the *common* gender? 91. How many modes of distinguishing sex are there? 92. Which is the first and most common? 93. Which are the most usual feminine terminations? Give examples of those words which retain the whole

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Arbiter	arbitress.	Lad	lass.
Benefactor	benefactress.	Marquis	marchioness.
Chanter	chantress.	Master	mistress.
Conductor	conductress.	Protector	protectress.
Duke	duchess.	Seamster	seamstress.
Elector	electress.	Songster	songstress.
Emperor	empress.	Sorcerer	sorceress.
Governor	governess.	Tiger	tigress.
Hunter	huntress.	Traitor	traitress.

The words which express the feminine by the termination *ix*, are of Latin origin, thus:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Administrator	administratrix.	Executor	executrix.
Director	directrix.	Testator	testatrix.

Those which express the feminine by the terminations *a, ina, and iae*, are also of foreign origin, and are few in number, thus:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Czar	czarina.	Margrave	margravine.
Hero	heroine.	Sultan	sultana.
Landgrave	landgravine.		

94. (2.) Distinction of sex is also expressed by a different word being employed to denote the feminine, thus:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Beau	belle.	Gaffer	gammer.
Boy	girl.	Gander	goose.
Bridegroom	bride.	Hart	roe.
Brother	sister.	Horse	mare.
Buck	doe.	Husband	wife.
Bull	cow.	King	queen.
Bullock	heifer.	Lord	lady.
Colt	filly.	Man	woman.
Drake	duck.	Monk	nun.
Earl	countess.	Nephew	niece.
Father	mother.	Ram	ewe.

masculine. Of those which have undergone contraction. Of those which express the feminine by the termination *ix*. Of those which express the feminine by the termination in *a, ina, and ine.* 94. (2.) What is the second mode of distinguishing sex? Give examples.

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
Sloven	slut.	Uncle	aunt.
Son	daughter.	Widower	widow.
Stag	hind.	Wizard	witch.

95. (3.) Distinction of sex is also sometimes expressed by prefixing a separate word to indicate the gender, thus:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
He-goat	she-goat.	Cock-sparrow...	hen-sparrow.
Man-servant .	maid-servant.	Male-child.....	female-child.

III. CASE.

96. There are three Cases, — the *Nominative*, the *Possessive*, and the *Objective*.

As the only relation of nouns which is expressed in English by a change of termination is that of ownership, or possession, there are, strictly speaking, only two cases, the noun in its simple form, and the noun with the possessive termination; as, *boy*, *boy's*.

97. The noun is in the *nominative* case when it is the name of the person or thing which *acts*, or *is spoken of*.

98. The noun is in the *possessive* case when it expresses ownership, or possession.

99. The noun is in the *objective* case when it is the name of the person or thing which is the object or end of an action or movement.

Thus, in the sentence — “James strikes John’s horse,” *James*, as the agent, is in the *nominative* case; *John’s*, as expressing the relation of ownership, is in the *possessive*; and *horse*, being the name of the object,* is in the *objective*.

100. The *nominative* and *objective* are both expressed by the noun in its simple form.

* When a noun *does* any thing, it is called the *agent*, and when something is done to it, it is called the *object*.

95. (3). What is the third mode of distinguishing sex? Give examples. 96. How many cases are there? 97. What is meant by the *nominative* case? 98. What is meant by the *possessive* case? 99. What is meant by the *objective* case? Give an example of each, in the same sentence. 100. How are the *nominative* and *objective* expressed?

101. The *possessive* is formed, in the singular, by adding *s*, with an apostrophe before it (*'s*);* as, *Father*, *Father's*.

102. The *possessive* is formed, in the plural, by adding only an apostrophe; as, *Fathers*, *Fathers'*.

When the noun ends in *s*, *ss*, *ce*, or any other termination which does not easily admit of a hissing sound after it, the possessive is formed by simply annexing the apostrophe without the letter *s*; as, “for righteousness’ sake, for conscience’ sake.”

When the plural does not end in *s*, the possessive plural is formed in the same manner as the possessive singular; as, *men*, *men's*.

103. A noun is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Father	Fathers	<i>Nom.</i>	Man	Men
<i>Poss.</i>	Father's ...	Fathers'	<i>Poss.</i>	Man's	Men's
<i>Obj.</i>	Father	Fathers	<i>Obj.</i>	<u>Man</u>	Men

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.

104. The adjectives which admit of inflection, are such as denote qualities susceptible of increase, and a few Numerals.

105. Adjectives which denote qualities susceptible of increase, admit of inflection to express *comparison*.

106. There are three degrees of comparison, — the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

107. The *positive* is expressed by the adjective in its simple state; as, *hard*.

* It has been supposed that the termination (*'s*) of the English possessive, is a contraction for the possessive pronoun *his*. Thus, “John’s book” has been said to be an abbreviation of “John his book.” But this opinion is evidently erroneous. The termination (*'s*) cannot always be resolved into the pronoun *his*. We cannot resolve “queen’s crown” into “queen *his* crown,” or “children’s bread” into “children *his* bread.” The fact seems to be, that the English possessive termination is one of the parts of our language which we have preserved from the Saxon. The casual termination of the Saxon possessive is *es*, or *is*; as appears in such phrases as “Godes sight,” “kingis crown.” The progress of change in the termination seems to have been *es*, *is*, *'s*.

101. How is the possessive formed in the singular? 102. How in the plural? — How when the noun ends in *s*, *ss*, or *ce*? — When the plural does not end in *s*? 103. How is a noun declined? 104. What adjectives admit of inflection? 105. What adjectives are compared? 106. What are the degrees of comparison? 107, 108, 109. How are

108. The *comparative* denotes a greater degree of the quality expressed by the *positive*; as, *harder*.

109. The *superlative* denotes the greatest degree of the quality, expressed by the *positive*; as, *hardest*.

110. The *comparative* is generally formed by adding *r*, or *er*, to the *positive*; as, *safe*, *safer*; *tall*, *taller*.

111. The *superlative* is generally formed by adding *st*, or *est*, to the *positive*; as, *safe*, *safest*; *tall*, *tallest*.

112. The following adjectives are compared irregularly:—

Good	better	best.
Bad		
Evil }	worse	worst.
Ill }		
Little	less	least.
Many }	more	most.
Much }		
Far	farther	farthest.
Fore	former	foremost or first.
In	inner	inmost or innermost.
Late	later	latest or last.
Near	nearer	nearest or next.
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest.
Out	outer	utmost or outermost.
Up	upper	upmost or uppermost.

113. Adjectives are also compared by prefixing the words *more* and *most* to the *positive*; as, *gentle*, *more gentle*, *most gentle*.

It would seem, from the diversity of usage which prevails, that it is left to the ear and taste to determine whether the comparison should be expressed in any particular instance by a change of termination, or by prefixing *more* and *most*.

Adjectives of one syllable, and dissyllable adjectives in *y* and *le* pure, are generally compared in the former way; adjectives of more than two syllables, and dissyllables which do not end in *y* or *le* pure, in the latter.

A few adjectives form their superlative by adding *most* to the comparative; as, *nether*, *nethermost*; *lower*, *lowermost*; and a few by

they distinguished? 110, 111. How are the comparative and superlative formed? 112. What adjectives are irregular? 113. What is the other mode of comparison? What general rule is given respecting the two modes of comparison? When is *most* used as a termination?

adding *most* either to the *positive* or to the *comparative*; as, *hind*, *hindmost*, or *hindermost*.

There is also a species of comparison made by adding the affix *ish*, which lessens the signification of the *positive*; as, *black*, *blackish*; *white*, *whitish*.* In this form the adjective is called a *diminutive*.

INFLECTION OF PRONOUNS.

114. The Pronouns which admit of inflection, are, the *Personal*, the *Relative*, the *Reciprocal*, and the *Demonstrative*.

115. The Personal Pronouns admit of *Number*, *Gender*, and *Case*.

116. They are thus declined:—

First Person Masc. or Fem.		Second Person Masc. or Fem.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. I	We †	Nom. Thou	Ye or you †
Poss. My or mine	Our or ours	Poss. Thy or thine	You or yours
Obj. Me	Us	Obj. Thee	You
Third Pers. Masc.		Third Pers. Fem.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. He	They	Nom. She	They
Poss. His	Their or theirs	Poss. Her or hers	Their or theirs
Obj. Him	Them.	Obj. Her	Them

* The words, *prior*, *exterior*, *inferior*, *superior*, *ulterior*, &c., which have the form of Latin comparatives, are not to be considered comparative in English. Besides wanting the termination of the English comparative, they are not followed by *than*, its distinguishing mark.

† The idea expressed by the plurals of *I* and *thou*, is not the same with that expressed by the plural of nouns. In nouns, the plural is equivalent to the singular repeated. Thus, *boys* is equal to *boy + boy + boy*, &c., indefinitely. But *we* is not equivalent to *I + I + I*, &c., but to *I + others*, joined with *myself*. In the same manner, *ye*, or *you*, is not equivalent to *thou + thou + thou*, &c., but to *thou + others*, joined with *you*.

What is indicated by the termination *ish*? 114. Which pronouns admit of inflection? 115. Of what do the personal pronouns admit? 116. Decline *I — Thou — He — She — It*. 117. Decline *Who — Which*.

Third Person Neuter.

Nom.	It	They
Poss.	Its	Their or theirs
Obj.	It	Them *

117. The Relatives, *who* and *which*, are thus declined:—

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Who	Who	Nom.	Which	Which
Poss.	Whose	Whose	Poss.	Whose?	Whose
Obj.	Whom	Whom	Obj.	Which	Which

118. The Relatives *that*, and *as*, admit of no variation.

119. The Reciprocal Pronoun, *self*, has, in the plural, *selves*.

120. The Demonstrative Pronouns, *this*, and *that*, have, for their plurals, *these* and *those*.

The Indefinite Pronoun, *another*, is the only adjective-pronoun which admits of variation to express case—*another's* being the possessive case.

INFLECTION OF VERBS.

121. Verbs admit of inflection to express *Number*, *Person*, and *Time*.

122. Verbs have two Numbers, the *Singular*, and the *Plural*; as, *he loves*, *they love*.

123. Verbs have three Persons, corresponding with those of the personal pronouns; as, *I love*, *thou lovest*, *he loves*.

124. The only distinction of Time, or Tense, made by inflection,† is into *Present* and *Past*; as, *I love*, *I loved*.

* The oblique cases of the personal pronouns are so different, in some instances, from the nominative, that they must have originally belonged to different words.

† Whatever grammarians may say, it does not admit of doubt, that *whose*, as the possessive of *which*, is the general usage of the language.

‡ The pupil will recollect that *inflection* is that *change of termination* which words undergo to express their various relations. The variations in the signification of verbs, produced by the use of the auxiliary, or generic verbs, are not, strictly speaking, inflections. They will be brought into view under the head of INFLECTION OF COMPOUND VERBS.

118. What is said of *that* and *as*? 119. What is said of *self*? 120. What is said of the Demonstratives?—Of *another*? 121. What do verbs express by inflection? 122. How many numbers have verbs? 123. How many persons? 124. What distinctions of time are ex-

The present tense denotes that the action, or state, expressed by the verb, is in present time. The past tense denotes that the action, or state, expressed by the verb, is in past time.

125. Verbs also admit of inflection to form the *Present* and *Perfect Participles*.

126. The *Present Participle* is formed by adding *ing* to the verb, and denotes that the action is proceeding; as, *loving*, *walking*.

127. The *Perfect Participle* is formed by adding *d*, or *ed*, and denotes that the action is finished; as, *loved*, *walked*.

In strictness, the participles are not parts of the verb, as they do not imply affirmation, but are merely adjectives, formed from verbs.

128. Verbs are divided into *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

129. Verbs are *regular* when the Past tense, and Perfect participle are formed by adding *d*, or *ed*, to the present; as,

Present.	Past.	Perfect Part.
Love	Loved	Loved.
Walk	Walked	Walked.

130. Verbs are *Irregular* when the Past tense, and Perfect participle, are formed in any other way than by adding *d*, or *ed*, to the present; as,

Present.	Past.	Perfect Part.
Write	Wrote	Written.
Do	Did	Done.

131. Verbs are *Defective* when they want one or more of these three parts; as,

Present.	Past.	Perfect Part.
May	Might	
Must	Must	

pressed by inflection? What does the Present tense denote?—The Past? 125. What participles are formed by inflection? 126. How is the present participle formed? 127. How is the Perfect formed? 128. How are verbs divided? 129. When are verbs *regular*? 130. When are verbs *Irregular*? 131. When are verbs *Defective*?

132. *Regular Verbs* are thus inflected:—

TO LOVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Love	Loved	Loved.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st Per. I love	1st Per. We loved,
2d Per. Thou lovest	2d Per. Ye or you loved,
3d Per. He, she, or it loves, } or loveth	3d Per. They love.

Past Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I loved	1. We loved,
2. Thou lovedst	2. Ye or you loved,
3. He, she, or it loved	3. They loved.

Participles.

<i>Present.</i> Loving	<i>Perfect.</i> Loved.
------------------------------	------------------------

133. *Irregular Verbs* are thus inflected:—

TO WRITE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Write	Wrote	Written.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I write	1. We write,
2. Thou writest	2. Ye or you write,
3. He, she, or it writes, or writeth	3. They write.

Past Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I wrote	1. We wrote;
2. Thou wrotest	2. Ye or you wrote,
3. He, she, or it wrote	3. They wrote.

Participles.

<i>Present.</i> Writing	<i>Perfect.</i> Written.
-------------------------------	--------------------------

132. How are *Regular* verbs inflected? 133. How are *Irregular* verbs

134. There are, at least, one hundred and seventy irregular verbs in the English language; but there is some uniformity even in their irregularities.

Some of the irregularities are mere abbreviations; as, *crept*, for *creeped*; *left*, for *leaved*; *had*, for *haved*.

135. Some reject *ed*, in the past tense and perfect participle, from the difficulty of making this termination coalesce with the verb in its simple form; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Cost	cost	cost.
Put	put	put.
Spread	spread	spread.

136. Many have *ght* in the past tense and perfect participle; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Bring	brought	brought.
Buy	bought	bought.
Catch	caught	caught.

137. Many retain the old participial termination, *en*, or *n*, instead of adopting the modern *ed*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Freeze	froze	frozen.
Show	showed	shown.
Smite	smote	smitten.

138. Several verbs in *ing* retain the Saxon, *ung*, in the past tense and perfect participle; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Cling	clung	clung.
Fling	flung	flung.
Ring	rang or rung	rung.

139. The following is a list of *Irregular Verbs**:—

* The most convenient mode of reciting these verbs is for the teacher to give the Present Tense, or simple form of each verb, and the pupil to give the three parts, in answer.

inflected? 134. How many irregular verbs are there in the English language? 135. Give examples of those which reject *ed* in the past tense, from the difficulty of making this termination coalesce with the verb in its simple form. 136. Give examples of those having *ght* in the past tense, and perfect participle. 137. Give examples of those retaining the old participial termination in *en*. 138. Give examples of those which retain the Saxon *ung*, in the past tense and perfect participle.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke, or awaked	awaked
Bake	baked	baked, or baken
Bear, to bring forth	bore, or bare	born
Bear, to carry	bore, or bare	borne
Beat	beat	beat, or beaten
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld, or beholden
Bend	bent, or bended	bent, or bended
Bereave	bereft, or bereaved	bereft, or bereaved
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid	bade, or bid	bidden
Bind	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten, or bit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke, or break	broken
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built, or builded	built, or builded
Burst	burst	burst
Buy	bought	bought
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught, or catched	caught, or catched
Chide	chid	chidden
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, to adhere	clave, or cleaved	cleaved
Cleave, to split	clove, clave, cleft	cloven, or cleft
Cling	clung	clung
Climb	climbed, or clomb	climbed
Clothe	clothed, or clad	clothed, or clad
Come	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Crow	crowed, or crew	crowed
Creep	crept	crept
Cut	cut	cut
Dare, to venture	durst, or dared	dared
Deal	dealt, or dealed	dealt, or dealed
Dig	dug, or digged	dug, or digged
Do	did	done

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk, or drunken
Drive	drove	driven
Dwell	dwelt or dwelled	dwelt, or dwelled
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore, or forbore	forborne
Forget	forgot	forgotten, or forgot
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get	got, or gat	gotten, or got
Gild	gilt, or gilded	gilt, or gilded
Gird	girt, or girded	girt, or girded
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grave	graved	graven, or graved
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown
Hang	hung, or hanged	hung, or hanged
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Heave	heaved, or hove	heaved, or hoven
Help	helped	helped, or holpen
Hew	hewed	hewn, or hewed
Hide	hid	hidden, or hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	held	held, or holden
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Knit	knit, or knitted	knit, or knitted
Know	knew	known
Lade	laded	laden
Lay	laid	laid
Lead	led	led
Leave	left	left

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, <i>to lie down</i> ..	lay	lain, <i>or</i> lien
Lift	lifted, <i>or</i> lift	lifted, <i>or</i> lift
Light	lighted, <i>or</i> lit	lighted, <i>or</i> lit
Load	loaded	loaden, <i>or</i> loaded
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant, <i>or</i> meant ..	meant, <i>or</i> meant
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown, <i>or</i> mowed
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Quit	quit, <i>or</i> quitted ..	quit
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	rent
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode, <i>or</i> rid	ridden, <i>or</i> rid
Ring	rung, <i>or</i> rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Rot	rotted	rotted, <i>or</i> rotten
Run	ran	run
Saw	sawed	sawn, <i>or</i> sawed
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Seek	sought	sought
Seethe	seethed, <i>or</i> sod ..	sodden
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Set	set	set
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape	shaped	shaped, <i>or</i> shapen
Shave	shaved	shaved, <i>or</i> shaven
Shear	sheared, <i>or</i> shore ..	shorn
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	shone, <i>or</i> shined ..	shone, <i>or</i> shined
Shew	shewed	shewn
Show	showed	shown
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Shrink	shrunk, <i>or</i> shrank ..	shrunk
Shred	shred	shred

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sung, <i>or</i> sang	sung
Sink	sunk, <i>or</i> sank	sunk, <i>or</i> sunken
Sit	sat	sitten, <i>or</i> sat
Slay	slew	slain
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	slid	slidden
Sling	slung, <i>or</i> slang	slung
Slit	slit, <i>or</i> slitted	slit, <i>or</i> slitted
Smite	smote	smitten, <i>or</i> smit
Sow	sowed	sown, <i>or</i> sowed
Speak	spake, <i>or</i> spoke	spoken
Speed	sped	sped
Spend	spent	spent
Spill	spilt, <i>or</i> spilled	spilt, <i>or</i> spilled
Spin	spun, <i>or</i> span	spun
Spit	spit, <i>or</i> spat	spit, <i>or</i> spitten
Split	split, <i>or</i> splitted	split, <i>or</i> splitted
Spread	spread	spread
Spring	sprung, <i>or</i> sprang ..	sprung
Stand	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stunk, <i>or</i> stank	stunk
Stride	strode, <i>or</i> strid	stridden
Strike	struck	struck, <i>or</i> stricken
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Strew, <i>or</i> }	strewed, <i>or</i> }	strown, <i>or</i> {strewed strowed
Strow }	strowed }	
Swear	swore, <i>or</i> sware	sworn
Sweat	sweat	sweat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swelled, <i>or</i> swollen
Swim	swam, <i>or</i> swum	swum
Swing	swing, <i>or</i> swang	swung
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	tore, <i>or</i> tare	torn
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Thrive	throve, <i>or</i> thrived ..	thriven

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Throw	threw.....	thrown
Thrust.....	thrust.....	thrust
Tread	trod, or trode.....	trodden
Wax	waxed	waxed, or waxen
Wear.....	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Weep	wept.....	wept
Win.....	won	won
Wind.....	wound, or winded.....	wound
Work	wrought, or worked ..	wrought, or worked
Wring.....	wrung, or wringed....	wrung, or wringed
Write	wrote, or writ	written, or writ
Writhe	writhed	writhen, or writhed

140. The *Defective Verbs* are the following; and they are generally irregular, as well as defective:—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Can.....	could	
Forego		forgone
May.....	might.....	
Must.....	must	
Ought.....	ought.....	
Shall.....	should.....	
Will.....	would	
Wis.....	wist	
Wit, or Wot	wot.....	

141. The *Irregular Verbs*, *be*, *do*, *have*, and the *Defective Verbs*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, are perhaps of greater use than any other verbs in the language.

They are called *Generic Verbs* from the extreme generality of the ideas they express; and to distinguish them from such verbs as *love*, *write*, which, being expressive of more limited ideas, are called *Specific Verbs*.

To be, denotes *being* or *existence* in general; as, "He *is*," "He *is* old," "It *is* written."

To do, denotes *action* in general; as, "I *do* wrong," "I *do* write."

To have, denotes *possession* in general; as, "I *have* knowledge," "I *have* written."

140. Give a list of the *Defective Verbs*, with all their parts. 141. Which are the most useful verbs in the language? Why are they called *Generic Verbs*? What does *to be* denote? *To do*? *To have*?

Shall, denotes *duty* or *obligation* in general, and, by inference, *futurity*; as, "He *shall* obey me," "I *shall* write to-morrow."

Will, denotes *volition* or *intention*, and, by inference, *futurity*; as, "I *will*, be thou whole," "He *will* write to-morrow."

May, conveys the idea of *liberty* or *permission*, and, by inference, *contingency*; as, "He *may* go if he *will*," "He *may* have written or not."

Can, has the sense of *is able*, and denotes *power* or *ability* in general; as, "I *can* write, though you cannot."

142. The *Generic Verbs* are thus inflected:—

TO BE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Am.....	was.....	been

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I am	1. We are,
2. Thou art	2. Ye or you are,
3. He, she, or it is.....	3. They are.

Past Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I was.....	1. We were,
2. Thou wast.....	2. Ye or you were,
3. He, she, or it was.....	3. They were.

Past Tense Conditional.

(When used to assert contingent or conditional existence.)*

1. I were.....	1. We were,
2. Thou wert.....	2. Ye or you were,
3. He, she, or it were.....	3. They were.

Participles.

<i>Imperfect.</i> Being.....	<i>Perfect.</i> Been.
------------------------------	-----------------------

Infinitive.† Be, or to be.

* The verb *to be* is the only one in the English language which has a simple conditional form. In the case of all other verbs, the form, when it occurs, is purely elliptical. Thus, "If he *say* so, it is well," is an ellipsis for "If he *shall* say so."

"Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him," is an ellipsis for "Though he *should* slay me."

† The infinitive is given in the conjugation of the verb *to be*, because it is the only instance in which the *infinitive* is different in form from

Shall? *Will*? *May*? *Can*? 142. How is the *Generic Verb to be* inflected?

TO DO.

Present.	Past.	Perfect Part.
Do.....	did.....	done.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I do.....	1. We do,
2. Thou doest or dost.....	2. Ye or you do,
3. He, she, or it doeth, doth, or does....	3. They do.

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I did.....	1. We did,
2. Thou didst.....	2. Ye or you did,
3. He, she, or it did.....	3. They did.

Participles.

Imperfect. Doing.....	Perfect. Done.
-----------------------	----------------

TO HAVE.

Present.	Past.	Perfect Part.
Have.....	had.....	had.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I have.....	1. We have,
2. Thou hast.....	2. Ye or you have,
3. He, she, or it hath or has.....	3. They have.

Past Tense.

1. I had.....	1. We had,
2. Thou hadst.....	2. Ye or you had,
3. He, she, or it had.....	3. They had.

Participles.

Imperfect. Having.....	Perfect. Had.
------------------------	---------------

the *present* tense. But it is more than probable that even this verb did not originally furnish an exception to the universal usage of the language. The present tense, *I be, thou beest, &c.*, is used by old writers; and it is still used (with perhaps the exception of *beest*;) when doubt or contingency is to be expressed. Thus, "If thou *be* the Son of God, cast thyself down."

How is the Generic Verb *to do* inflected? The Generic Verb *to have*?

SHALL.*

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall.....	1. We shall.
2. Thou shalt.....	2. Ye or you shall,
3. He, she, or it shall.....	3. They shall.

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I should.....	1. We should,
2. Thou shouldst.....	2. Ye or you should,
3. He, she, or it should.....	3. They should.

WILL.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I will.....	1. We will,
2. Thou wilt.....	2. Ye or you will,
3. He, she, or it will.....	3. They will.

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I would.....	1. We would,
2. Thou wouldst.....	2. Ye or you would,
3. He, she, or it would.....	3. They would.

* *Shall* is a derivative from the Saxon *scéal*, *I owe*, or, *I ought*, and signifies, "it is my duty." It is used in this sense by our old writers; as, for instance, by Chaucer, when he says, "The faith *I shall* to God;" that is, "the faith I owe to God;" nor has it ever yet lost its original signification. "Thou *shalt* not kill," is, "thou oughtest not to kill." But as all duties, though present in respect of their obligation, must be future in their performance, so, by a natural transition, this word, which strictly predicates only *present duty*, has come to be used as "a note of future time." Hence it is described, in the text, as expressive of duty, and, by inference, of futurity. *Will*, in like manner, only expresses present intention; yet, as the performance of present intention is necessarily future, it is employed to note futurity. "I *shall* write," in strictness, intimates no more than it is my present duty to write; but the phrase is universally interpreted as if it meant to intimate that I am to write at some time *now* future. "He *will* write," in strictness, intimates no more than that it is his present intention to write; but the same interpretation is universally put upon it as upon the other phrase. The difference between the present application of *shall* and *will* is clearly stated by Webster: *shall* is merely future in the first person, and imperative in the other two; with *will*, the case is exactly reversed.

How is the generic verb *Shall* inflected? — How is *Will* inflected?

MAY.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I may	1. We may,
2. Thou mayest	2. Ye, or you may,
3. He, she, or it may	2. They may.

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I might	1. We might,
2. Thou mightest	2. Ye, or you might,
3. He, she, or it might	3. They might.

CAN.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I can	1. We can,
2. Thou canst	2. Ye, or you can,
3. He, she, or it can	3. They can.

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I could	1. We could,
2. Thou couldst	2. Ye, or you could,
3. He, she, or it could	3. They could.

II. INFLECTION OF COMPOUND VERBS.

143. The generic verbs are most commonly used in combination with other verbs, which are joined with them to limit their signification.

Thus, if I say, *I can*, I affirm that I have power or ability in general, without limiting it to any particular kind, or application of power.

But if I subjoin the specific verb, *write*, and say, *I can write*, I restrict my affirmation to my power to write.

144. The generic verbs, when combined with other verbs, form what are called *Compound Verbs*.

Thus, *I have loved, I had written, I shall have walked, I might have been struck*, are compound verbs.

How is the generic verb *May* inflected? — How is *Can* inflected?
143. How are the generic verbs used? Give an example. 144. What are

The generic verbs have obtained the name of *Auxiliary Verbs*, from being used, principally, to form compound verbs.

Compound verbs are essential, in order to enable us to express those additional tenses and modifications which languages of a more artificial structure express by inflection.

In consequence of the facility it affords for forming compound tenses, our language, though limited in tenses formed by inflection, is rich beyond most languages in tenses formed by combination.

When combined with other verbs, our generic verbs serve the same purposes as the inflections of the simple verb in languages which have numerous inflections.

ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I did speak	Je parlais	Dicebam.
I shall speak	Je parlerai	Dicam.
I might speak	Je parlerais	Dicerem.

Here, *did*, *shall*, and *might*, correspond to, and serve the same purpose with, the flexional terminations, *aïs*, *erai*, and *erais*, in French, and *ebam*, *am*, and *erem*, in Latin.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

145. Compound Transitive verbs have two Voices, or Forms, — the *Active* and *Passive*.

146. The *Active Voice* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject, or nominative, is the agent; as, "*I have struck*."

147. The *Passive Voice* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject, or nominative, is the object of the action; as, "*I have been struck*."

MOODS.

In giving the inflection of compound verbs, it has been deemed necessary, in the present work, to conform to the usual arrangement of moods and tenses, by which the simple are exhibited in connexion with the compound forms of the verbs. Before proceeding to exhibit the moods and tenses in their usual order, an explanation of their meaning and intention, as generally understood, is here given.

148. Mood, or mode, is a form of the verb, showing the manner in which the action is represented.

compound verbs? Give an example. What are auxiliary verbs? What is the use of compound verbs? In what is our language rich? What is the use of the generic verbs in combination with other verbs? Give examples of French and Latin inflections compared with the English combinations of generic verbs, with the irregular verb *Speak*. 145. How many voices have Transitive verbs? 146. Define the *Active Voice*. 147. Define the *Passive Voice*. 148. What is meant by mood,

149. There are five Moods, the *Indicative*, *Potential*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

150. The *Indicative* Mood simply affirms or declares a thing; as, I *love*; I *am loved*.

151. The *Potential* Mood is the form of the verb which is used for asserting the *possibility*, *liberty*, *power*, *will*, or *obligation* to be, to do, or to suffer; as, I *may* go or stay; I *can* write; I *would* walk; We *should* respect the laws.

For convenience the forms of this mood are arranged under different tenses; but in strictness they appear to have very little distinct reference to time. For example, in the form of the present tense there is nothing to indicate that the action is not referred to a future and even a remote time; as, I *may* have permission to leave college to-day, next week, or next year.

152. The *Subjunctive* Mood represents an action under a condition, motive, wish, or supposition. It is generally preceded by a conjunction, expressed or understood, and attended by another verb; as, "If ye *love* me, keep my commandments."

153. The *Imperative* Mood is the form of the verb which is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting; as, *Obey* me; *Remember* thy Creator; *Hear*, O Israel; *Depart* in peace.

Perhaps it is more accurate to limit the definition of the Imperative Mood to *commanding*, as it will be observed that in each of the above examples the verb assumes the *form of command*.

The Imperative Mood is a simple form of the verb, having no inflection. In the following arrangement of the mood and tenses, it will be found with the compound forms, in order that the pupil may recite the whole in connection.

154. The *Infinitive* Mood expresses action or being in a general manner, without any distinction of number or person; as, *To love*; *to write*.

The preposition *to* being generally prefixed to the verb in this mood, is called the *sign of the Infinitive*.

or mode? 149. How many moods are there, and what are their names? 150. Define the *Indicative* Mood. 151. The *Potential* Mood. 152. The *Subjunctive* Mood. 153. The *Imperative* Mood. 154. The *Infinitive* Mood. What is the sign of the Infinitive?

As the essence of the verb consists in affirmation, the infinitive is not strictly speaking a part of the verb, any more than the participles; it is more properly a noun, and it was formerly called the *nomen*, or name of the verb.

The Infinitive Mood is a simple form of the verb, like the Imperative; and it is included in the arrangement of the compound forms for the same reason.

TENSE.

155. The Tenses are modifications of the verb which mark the distinctions of time.

156. There are six tenses, including those expressed by inflection alone, and those expressed by the use of auxiliary or generic verbs. They are, the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *First Future*, and the *Second Future*.

157. The *Present Tense* denotes that the action or state expressed by the verb, is in present time; as, I *love*.

158. In order to give greater force to the affirmation the Present Tense occasionally assumes what is called an *Emphatic Form*, by the use of the auxiliary verb *do*; as, I *do write*.

159. The *Imperfect Tense* denotes that the action or state expressed by the verb is past; as, I *loved*.

160. The *Imperfect Tense* has an *Emphatic Form*, similar to that of the Present Tense; as, I *did write*.

161. The *Perfect Tense* represents an action as completed at the present time; as, I *have written* my letter.

162. The *Pluperfect Tense* denotes that the action or event has taken place at or before a certain time past; as, I *had left* the city before he arrived.

163. The *First Future Tense* denotes an action or event which is yet to come; as, I *will walk*; He *shall depart*.

164. The *Second Future Tense* denotes that an action or event will take place at or before a future time; as, I *shall have finished* my theme at six o'clock; He *will have arrived* before the gates will be shut.

155. What are the Tenses? 156. How many Tenses are there? Name them. 157. Describe the *Present Tense*. 158. Its *Emphatic Form*. 159. The *Imperfect*. 160. Its *Emphatic Form*. 161. The *Perfect*. 162. The *Pluperfect*. 163. The *First Future*. 164. The *Second Future*.

CONJUGATION.

165. The *Conjugation* of a verb is the enunciation of its several modes, tenses, numbers, and persons, in their regular order.

The term *Conjugation* is sometimes applied to the naming of its three principal parts, viz : the present and imperfect tenses, and the perfect participle ; as, Present, *go* ; Imperfect, *went* ; Perfect Participle, *gone*.

166. In the following pages the generic verbs, *have* and *be*, the regular verb *love*, and the irregular verb *know*, are conjugated. The verbs *love* and *know* being active or transitive, are conjugated in the passive as well as in the active voice.*

TO HAVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I have	1. We have,
2. Thou hast	2. Ye, or you have,
3. He, she, or it hath, or has..	3. They have.

Present Tense — Emphatic Form.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I do have.....	1. We do have,
2. Thou dost have	2. Ye, or you do have,
3. He does have	3. They do have.

Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I had	1. We had,
2. Thou hadst	2. Ye, or you had,
3. He, she, or it had	3. They had.

* Some neuter verbs are occasionally used in the passive form by good writers ; as, *We are come* ; *they are gone*.

165. What is the Conjugation of a verb ? How is the term *Conjugation* sometimes limited ? 166. What verbs are conjugated in the following pages ? Which of them have the passive form ? Are neuter verbs ever used in the passive form ?

Imperfect Tense — Emphatic Form.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I did have	1. We did have,
2. Thou didst have	2. Ye or you did have,
3. He did have	3. They did have.

Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I have had	1. We have had,
2. Thou hast had	2. Ye or you have had,
3. He has had	3. They have had.

Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I had had	1. We had had,
2. Thou hadst had	2. Ye or you had had,
3. He had had	3. They had had.

First Future Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall or will have	1. We shall or will have,
2. Thou shalt or wilt have ...	2. Ye or you shall or will have,
3. He shall or will have	3. They shall or will have.

Second Future Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall have had	1. We shall have had,
2. Thou wilt have had	2. Ye or you will have had,
3. He will have had	3. They will have had.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
2. Have or have thou or do } thou have,	2. Have or have ye or do ye } or you have.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I may or can have	1. We may or can have,
2. Thou mayst or canst have .	2. Ye or you may or can have,
3. He may or can have	3. They may or can have.

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would or should have, | 1. We might, could, would or should have, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst or shouldst have, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would or should have, |
| 3. He might, could, would or should have. | 3. They might, could, would or should have. |

Perfect.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can have had, | 1. We may or can have had, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have had, | 2. Ye or you may or can have had, |
| 3. He may or can have had. | 3. They may or can have had. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would or should have had, | 1. We might, could, would or should have had, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst or shouldst have had, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would or should have had, |
| 3. He might, could, would or should have had. | 3. They might, could, would or should have had. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I have | 1. If we have, |
| 2. If thou have | 2. If ye or you have, |
| 3. If he have | 3. If they have. |

Present Tense — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I do have | 1. If we do have, |
| 2. If thou do have | 2. If ye or you do have, |
| 3. If he do have | 3. If they do have. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had | 1. If we had, |
| 2. If thou hadst | 2. If ye or you had, |
| 3. If he had | 3. If they had. |

Imperfect Tense — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I did have | 1. If we did have, |
| 2. If thou didst have | 2. If ye or you did have, |
| 3. If he did have | 3. If they did have. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I have had | 1. If we have had, |
| 2. If thou hast had | 2. If ye or you have had, |
| 3. If he has had | 3. If they have had. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had had | 1. If we had had, |
| 2. If thou hadst had | 2. If ye or you had had, |
| 3. If he had had | 3. If they had had. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall or will have | 1. If we shall or will have, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt have .. | 2. If ye or you shall or will have, |
| 3. If he shall or will have | 3. If they shall or will have. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall have had | 1. If we shall have had, |
| 2. If thou wilt have had | 2. If ye or you will have had, |
| 3. If he will have had | 3. If they will have had. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To have *Perfect.* To have had.

Participles.

Present, or Active. Having *Perfect.* Had.
Compound Perfect. Having had.

TO BE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I am | 1. We are, |
| 2. Thou art | 2. Ye or you are, |
| 3. He, she or it is | 3. They are. |

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I was	1. We were,
2. Thou wast	2. Ye or you were,
3. He was	3. They were,

Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I have been.....	1. We have been,
2. Thou hast been.....	2. Ye or you have been,
3. He hath, or has been.....	3. They have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I had been.....	1. We had been,
2. Thou hadst been.....	2. Ye or you had been,
3. He had been.....	3. They had been.

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall, or will be.....	1. We shall or will be,
2. Thou shalt or wilt be	2. Ye or you shall or will be,
3. He shall or will be	3. They shall or will be.

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall have been.....	1. We shall have been,
2. Thou wilt have been	2. Ye or you will have been,
3. He will have been.....	3. They will have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. Be thou or do thou be	2. Be ye or you or do ye be.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I may or can be	1. We may or can be,
2. Thou mayst or canst be ...	2. Ye or you may or can be,
3. He may or can be	3. They may, or can be.

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I might, could, would, or should be,	1. We might, could, would, or should be,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be,	2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should be,
3. He might, could, would, or should be.	3. They might, could, would, or should be.

Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I may or can have been,	1. We may or can have been,
2. Thou mayst or canst have been,	2. Ye or you may or can have been,
3. He may or can have been.	3. They may or can have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I might, could, would, or should have been,	1. We might, could, would, or should have been,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been,	2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have been,
3. He might, could, would, or should have been.	3. They might, could, would, or should have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. If I be.....	1. If we be,
2. If thou be.....	2. If ye or you be,
3. If he be	3. If they be.

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. If I were.....	1. If we were,
2. If thou wert	2. If ye or you were,
3. If he were.....	3. If they were.

Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. If I have been	1. If we have been,
2. If thou hast been.....	2. If ye or you have been,
3. If he hath or has been	3. If they have been.

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had been | 1. If we had been, |
| 2. If thou hadst been | 2. If ye or you had been, |
| 3. If he had been | 3. If they had been. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall or will be | 1. If we shall or will be, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt be | 2. If ye or you shall or will be, |
| 3. If he shall or will be | 3. If they shall or will be. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall have been | 1. If we shall have been, |
| 2. If thou wilt have been | 2. If ye or you will have been, |
| 3. If he will have been | 3. If they will have been. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. To be.....*Perfect.* To have been.

Participles.

Present. Being.....*Perfect.* Been.
Compound Perfect. Having been.

ACTIVE VOICE.— TO LOVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I love | 1. We love, |
| 2. Thou lovest | 2. Ye or you love, |
| 3. He, she, or it loveth or loves. | 3. They love. |

Present Tense. — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I do love | 1. We do love, |
| 2. Thou dost love..... | 2. Ye or you do love, |
| 3. He does love..... | 3. They do love. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I loved | 1. We loved, |
| 2. Thou lovedst | 2. Ye or you loved, |
| 3. He loved..... | 3. They loved. |

Imperfect Tense. — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I did love..... | 1. We did love, |
| 2. Thou didst love | 2. Ye or you did love, |
| 3. He did love..... | 3. They did love. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I have loved | 1. We have loved, |
| 2. Thou hast loved | 2. Ye or you have loved, |
| 3. He has loved..... | 3. They have loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I had loved | 1. We had loved, |
| 2. Thou hadst loved | 2. Ye or you had loved, |
| 3. He had loved..... | 3. They had loved. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall or will love | 1. We shall or will love. |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt love | 2. Ye or you shall or will love, |
| 3. He shall or will love | 3. They shall or will love. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall have loved..... | 1. We shall have loved, |
| 2. Thou wilt have loved..... | 2. Ye or you will have loved, |
| 3. He will have loved | 3. They will have loved. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 2. Love, or love thou, or do ?
thou love..... | 2. Love, or love ye or you, or ?
do ye love..... |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can love | 1. We may or can love, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst love .. | 2. Ye or you may or can love, |
| 3. He may or can love | 3. They may or can love. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or should love, | 1. We might, could, would, or should love, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should love; |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should love. | 3. They might, could, would, or should love. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can have loved, | 1. We may or can have loved, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have loved, | 2. Ye or you may or can have loved, |
| 3. He may or can have loved. | 3. They may or can have loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have loved, | 1. We might, could, would, or should have loved, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have loved, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have loved, |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have loved. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have loved. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I love..... | 1. If we love, |
| 2. If thou love..... | 2. If ye or you love, |
| 3. If he love..... | 3. If they love. |

Present Tense. — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I do love..... | 1. If we do love, |
| 2. If thou do love..... | 2. If ye or you do love, |
| 3. If he do love..... | 3. If they do love. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I loved..... | 1. If we loved, |
| 2. If thou lovedst..... | 2. If ye or you loved, |
| 3. If he loved..... | 3. If they loved. |

Imperfect Tense. — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I did love..... | 1. If we did love, |
| 2. If thou didst love..... | 2. If ye or you did love, |
| 3. If he did love..... | 3. If they did love. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I have loved..... | 1. If we have loved, |
| 2. If thou hast loved..... | 2. If ye or you have loved, |
| 3. If he has loved..... | 3. If they have loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had loved..... | 1. If we had loved, |
| 2. If thou hadst loved..... | 2. If ye or you had loved, |
| 3. If he had loved..... | 3. If they had loved. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall or will love..... | 1. If we shall or will love, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt love.... | 2. If ye or you shall or will love, |
| 3. If he shall or will love..... | 3. If they shall or will love. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall have loved..... | 1. If we shall have loved, |
| 2. If thou wilt have loved.... | 2. If ye or you will have loved, |
| 3. If he will have loved..... | 3. If they will have loved. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To love..... *Perfect.* To have loved.

Participles.

Present. Loving..... *Perfect.* Loved.
Compound Perfect. Having loved.

PASSIVE VOICE. — TO BE LOVED.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I am loved..... | 1. We are loved, |
| 2. Thou art loved..... | 2. Ye or you are loved, |
| 3. He is loved..... | 3. They are loved. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I was loved..... | 1. We were loved, |
| 2. Thou wast loved..... | 2. Ye or you were loved, |
| 3. He was loved..... | 3. They were loved. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I have been loved..... | 1. We have been loved, |
| 2. Thou hast been loved..... | 2. Ye or you have been loved, |
| 3. He has been loved..... | 3. They have been loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I had been loved..... | 1. We had been loved, |
| 2. Thou hadst been loved..... | 2. Ye or you had been loved, |
| 3. He had been loved..... | 3. They had been loved. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall or will be loved..... | 1. We shall or will be loved, |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt be loved..... | 2. Ye or you shall or will be loved, |
| 3. He shall or will be loved..... | 3. They shall or will be loved. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall have been loved..... | 1. We shall have been loved, |
| 2. Thou wilt have been loved..... | 2. Ye or you will have been loved, |
| 3. He will have been loved..... | 3. They will have been loved. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. Be thou loved, or do thou }
be loved | 2. Be ye, or you loved, or do }
ye be loved..... |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can be loved..... | 1. We may or can be loved, |
| 2. Thou mayest or canst be }
loved | 2. Ye or you may or can be }
loved, |
| 3. He may or can be loved... | 3. They may or can be loved. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or }
should be loved, | 1. We might, could, would, or }
should be loved, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, }
wouldst, or shouldst be }
loved, | 2. Ye or you might, could, }
would, or should be loved, |
| 3. He might, could, would, or }
should be loved. | 3. They might, could, would, }
or should be loved. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can have been }
loved, | 1. We may or can have been }
loved, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have }
been loved, | 2. Ye or you may or can have }
been loved, |
| 3. He may or can have been }
loved. | 3. They may or can have been }
loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or }
should have been loved, | 1. We might, could, would, or }
should have been loved, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, }
wouldst, or shouldst have }
been loved, | 2. Ye or you might, could, }
would, or should have been }
loved, |
| 3. He might, could, would, or }
should have been loved. | 3. They might, could, would, }
or should have been loved. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I be loved..... | 1. If we be loved, |
| 2. If thou be loved..... | 2. If ye or you be loved, |
| 3. If he be loved..... | 3. If they be loved. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I were loved..... | 1. If we were loved, |
| 2. If thou wert loved..... | 2. If ye or you were loved, |
| 3. If he were loved..... | 3. If they were loved. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I have been loved | 1. If we have been loved, |
| 2. If thou hast been loved | 2. If ye or you have been loved, |
| 3. If he has been loved | 3. If they have been loved. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had been loved | 1. If we had been loved, |
| 2. If thou hadst been loved ... | 2. If ye or you had been loved, |
| 3. If he had been loved | 3. If they had been loved. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall or will be loved, | 1. If we shall or will be loved, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt be loved, | 2. If ye or you shall or will be loved, |
| 3. If he shall or will be loved. | 3. If they shall or will be loved. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall have been loved, | 1. If we shall have been loved, |
| 2. If thou wilt have been loved, | 2. If ye or you will have been loved, |
| 3. If he will have been loved. | 3. If they will have been loved. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To be loved *Perfect.* To have been loved.

Participles.

Present. Being loved. *Perfect.* Loved.
Compound Perfect. Having been loved.

ACTIVE VOICE. — TO KNOW.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I know | 1. We know, |
| 2. Thou knowest | 2. Ye or you know, |
| 3. He knows | 3. They know. |

Present Tense. — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I do know | 1. We do know, |
| 2. Thou dost know | 2. Ye or you do know, |
| 3. He does know | 3. They do know. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I knew | 1. We knew, |
| 2. Thou knewest | 2. Ye or you knew, |
| 3. He knew | 3. They knew. |

Imperfect Tense — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I did know | 1. We did know, |
| 2. Thou didst know | 2. Ye or you did know, |
| 3. He did know | 3. They did know. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I have known | 1. We have known, |
| 2. Thou hast known | 2. Ye or you have known, |
| 3. He has known | 3. They have known. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I had known | 1. We had known, |
| 2. Thou hadst known | 2. Ye or you had known, |
| 3. He had known | 3. They had known. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall or will know | 1. We shall or will know, |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt know ... | 2. Ye or you shall or will know, |
| 3. He shall or will know | 3. They shall or will know. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I shall have known | 1. We shall have known, |
| 2. Thou wilt have known | 2. Ye or you will have known, |
| 3. He will have known | 3. They will have known. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 2. Know, or know thou, or
do thou know | 2. Know, or know ye or you,
or do ye know. } |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can know | 1. We may or can know, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst know. | 2. Ye or you may or can know, |
| 3. He may or can know | 3. They may or can know. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or should know, | 1. We might, could, would, or should know, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst know, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should know, |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should know. | 3. They might, could, would, or should know. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I may or can have known, | 1. We may or can have known, |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst have known, | 2. Ye or you may or can have known, |
| 3. He may or can have known. | 3. They may or can have known. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have known, | 1. We might, could, would, or should have known, |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have known, | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have known, |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have known. | 3. They might, could, would, or should have known. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I know | 1. If we know, |
| 2. If thou know | 2. If ye or you know, |
| 3. If he know | 3. If they know. |

Present Tense — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I do know | 1. If we do know, |
| 2. If thou do know | 2. If ye or you do know, |
| 3. If he do know | 3. If they do know. |

Imperfect Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I knew | 1. If we knew, |
| 2. If thou knewest | 2. If ye or you knew, |
| 3. If he knew | 3. If they knew. |

Imperfect Tense — Emphatic Form.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I did know | 1. If we did know, |
| 2. If thou didst know | 2. If ye or you did know, |
| 3. If he did know | 3. If they did know. |

Perfect Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I have known | 1. If we have known, |
| 2. If thou hast known | 2. If ye or you have known, |
| 3. If he has known | 3. If they have known. |

Pluperfect Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I had known | 1. If we had known, |
| 2. If thou hadst known | 2. If ye or you had known, |
| 3. If he had known | 3. If they had known. |

First Future Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall or will know | 1. If we shall or will know, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt know . | 2. If ye or you shall or will know, |
| 3. If he shall or will know ... | 3. If they shall or will know. |

Second Future Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. If I shall have known | 1. If we shall have known, |
| 2. If thou wilt have known ... | 2. If ye or you will have known, |
| 3. If he will have known | 3. If they will have known. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To know *Perfect.* To have known.

Participles.

Present. Knowing *Perfect.* Known.
Compound Perfect. Having known.

-PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I am known	1. We are known,
2. Thou art known	2. Ye or you are known,
3. He is known	3. They are known.

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I was known	1. We were known,
2. Thou wast or wert known,	2. Ye or you were known,
3. He was known	3. They were known.

Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I have been known	1. We have been known,
2. Thou hast been known	2. Ye or you have been known,
3. He has been known	3. They have been known.

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I had been known	1. We had been known,
2. Thou hadst been known...	2. Ye or you had been known,
3. He had been known	3. They had been known.

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall or will be known ...	1. We shall or will be known,
2. Thou shalt or wilt be known,	2. Ye or you shall or will be known,
3. He shall or will be known.	3. They shall or will be known.

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall have been known,	1. We shall have been known,
2. Thou wilt have been known,	2. Ye or you will have been known,
3. He will have been known.	3. They will have been known.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. Be thou known	2. Be ye or you known.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I may or can be known,	1. We may or can be known,
2. Thou mayst or canst be known,	2. Ye or you may or can be known,
3. He may or can be known.	3. They may or can be known.

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I might, could, would, or should be known,	1. We might, could, would, or should be known,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be known,	2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should be known,
3. He might, could, would, or should be known.	3. They might, could, would, or should be known.

Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I may or can have been known,	1. We may or can have been known,
2. Thou mayst or canst have been known,	2. Ye or you may or can have been known,
3. He may or can have been known.	3. They may or can have been known.

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I might, could, would, or should have been known,	1. We might, could, would, or should have been known,
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been known,	2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have been known,
3. He might, could, would, or should have been known.	3. They might, could, would, or should have been known.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. If I am known	1. If we are known,
2. If thou art known	2. If ye or you are known,
3. If he is known	3. If they are known.

*Imperfect Tense.**Sing.**Plur.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. If I was known | 1. If we were known, |
| 2. If thou wert known | 2. If ye or you were known, |
| 3. If he was known | 3. If they were known. |

*Perfect Tense.**Sing.**Plur.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. If I have been known | 1. If we have been known, |
| 2. If thou hast been known, .. | 2. If ye or you have been known, |
| 3. If he has been known | 3. If they have been known. |

*Pluperfect Tense.**Sing.**Plur.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. If I had been known | 1. If we had been known, |
| 2. If thou hadst been known . | 2. If ye or you had been known, |
| 3. If he had been known | 3. If they had been known. |

*First Future Tense.**Sing.**Plur.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. If I shall or will be known, | 1. If we shall or will be known, |
| 2. If thou shalt or wilt be known, | 2. If ye or you shall or will be known, |
| 3. If he shall or will be known. | 3. If they shall or will be known. |

*Second Future Tense.**Sing.**Plur.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. If I shall have been known, | 1. If we shall have been known, |
| 2. If thou wilt have been known, | 2. If ye or you will have been known, |
| 3. If he will have been known. | 3. If they will have been known. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To be known *Perfect.* To have been known.*Participles.**Imperfect.*

Being known.

Compound Perfect.

Having been known.

EXERCISES ON THE INFLECTION OF WORDS.

THE NOUN.

1. NUMBER. — Point out which of the following Nouns admit of number:—

Ark, Babel, church, Darius, elm, France, girl, hamlet, innkeeper, iron.

What is the Number of the following Nouns?

Berries, church, days, hills, lashes, mosses, nuts, pence, planets, silk.

Pronounce and spell the Plural of the following Nouns:—

Ass, army, book, brush, chair, city, delay, dandy, envoy, fly, fox, grandee, hero, horse, inch, jelly, knife, lake, monarch, negro, pass, penny, queen, rebus, rostrum, scarf, stratum, watch, whiff.

How do we form the Plural of,

Die, dwarf, dungeon, fife, fish, folio, genius, grotto, hoof, index, joy, lamina, ox, pea, radius, seraph, sheep, tooth, virtuoso?

Correct the Errors in the following expressions:—

Two foxs, old folioes, sharp reproves, young calfs, tall footmans, they are brethren sons of the same father, two dwarves, how many swines? I have two foots, handsome ladys, idle boies, sturdy oxes, volcanos are generally on islands.

The foregoing Exercises may be recited orally, and also may be written. Those which follow, referring to the Pictures, are to be written.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN BY THE PUPIL.



Wolf Hunt.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including nouns in the singular number, and nouns in the plural number, with verbs and adjectives.



A Conversation.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in the singular number*, and *nouns in the plural number*, with *verbs*, *articles*, and *adjectives*. Introduce *proper names*, by giving names to the persons represented in the picture.



Hop-Gathering.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in both numbers*, *pronouns*, *articles*, *verbs*, and *adjectives*.



The Village School.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in both numbers*, *articles*, *pronouns*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *adverbs*.

2. GENDER. — What is the gender of,

Boy, Charles, child, cousin, dog, father, farthing, friend, horse, huntsman, inkstand, Ireland, joy, king, lass, master, parent, quantity, stag, widower.

Convert the following Masculine Nouns into Feminine Nouns, pronouncing and spelling the Feminine: —

Drake, duke, earl, emperor, gentleman, hart, hero, host, hunter, lion, male-child, master, nephew, shepherd, widower.

Correct the Errors in the following expressions: —

Alexander, my sister. David is a widow. Eliza is a bridegroom. Charles the Second was a bad queen. She was my benefactress. How sweet a songsteress! This is my tutress. O the traitress! Look at that goatess.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN.



Charity.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in both genders*, with *verbs* and *adjectives*.



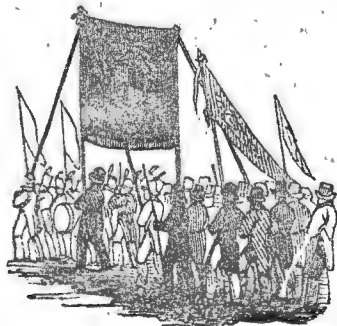
Domestic Scene.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in both genders*, with *verbs* and *adjectives*. Introduce *proper nouns*.



The Boy and the Geese.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in both genders*, with *articles*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *pronouns*.



The Procession.

Write *nouns* referring to this picture, including *nouns in the masculine gender*, with *verbs*, *articles*, *adjectives*, and *pronouns*.

3. CASE. — *Point out the Nouns in the following Sentences, and mention in what Case each of them is.*

John struck the table.

John's horse kicked James.

My brother's dog bit me, but I stoned my brother's dog.

The wall of the city shelters my father's house.

My father's house is sheltered by the wall of the city.

Men's thoughts are vanity.

Decline the following Nouns, both orally and in writing: —

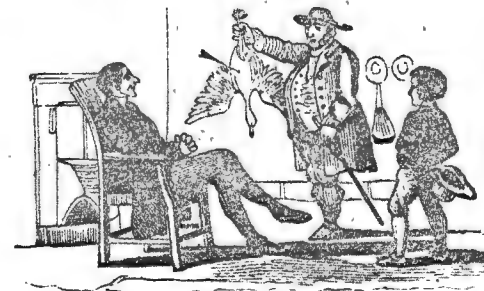
Ass, author, beau, Charles, hero, mother, parent, queen, ruler, woman.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN.



Domestic Scene.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *nouns in the nominative*, and *nouns in the objective case*, *articles*, *verbs*, and *adjectives*.



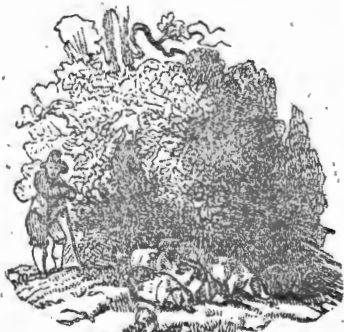
The Accusation.

Write sentences including *nouns in the nominative*, *possessive*, and *objective cases*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *articles*.



Gleaners.

Write sentences including *nouns* in the *nominative* and *possessive* cases, *articles*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *pronouns*.



The Pigs and their Keeper.

Write sentences including *nouns* in the *nominative* and *objective* cases, *articles*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *pronouns*.



The Gardener.

Write sentences referring to this picture, introducing *nouns*, *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *articles*, and showing the *inflections of nouns*, in *number*, *gender*, and *case*.



The Miser and his Poor Relations.

Write sentences showing the *inflections of nouns*, in *number*, *gender*, and *case*; and introducing *proper*, as well as *common nouns*.



Fanny and Lucy at Play.

Write sentences showing the *inflections of nouns*, in *number*, *gender*, and *case*; and introducing *proper nouns*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

Point out the Adjectives, in the following list, which admit of comparison: —

Able, beautiful, circular, cold, evil, few, four, full, golden, hilly, ill, just, long, mournful, ninth, open, right, square, supreme, universal, worshipful, worthy.

What degree of comparison are,

Ancient, better, costliest, dreary, envious, gayest, huge, lazy, more, most, tremendous, next, superior, uttermost?

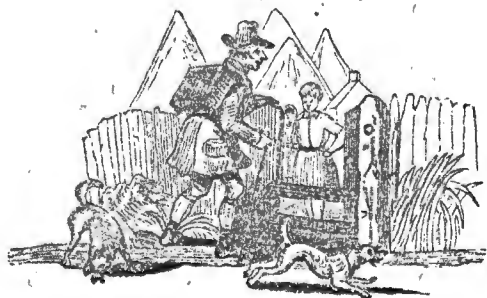
Pronounce and Spell the comparatives and superlatives of,

Bad, big, coy, cruel, faithful, grave, hale, ill, little, low, mad, pretty, pure, true, white, worthless.

Correct the following expressions: —

The good scholar is happier, as well as attentiver than the idler. Spring is the beautifullest season of the year; summer is the hottest; winter is the gloomyest; autumn is the livelyest. I have done it the rightest way, and deserve the chiefest price. John is littler, but gooder than you.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN.



The Pedlar.

Write sentences referring to this picture, including *adjectives in the positive degree, nouns, articles, and verbs.*



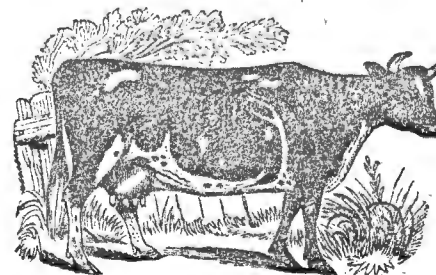
Conversation on the Road.

Write sentences introducing *nouns, articles, and verbs, with adjectives in the positive and comparative degrees.*



Sickness.

Write sentences including *nouns, verbs, and articles, with adjectives in the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees.*



The Cow.

Write sentences including *nouns, adjectives in the positive and comparative degrees, verbs, articles, and adverbs.*

THE PRONOUN.

What kind of Pronoun is,

Who, self, he, she, we, they, that, whether, our, their, which, what, thy, thou?

Tell the Person, Number, Gender, and Case, of each of the following Pronouns:—

Him, us, I, them, thine, yours, theirs, ours, ye, he, she, mine, we.

Parse the following sentences, telling the Number, Gender, and Case of Nouns; the degrees of comparison of the Adjectives; and the Person, Number, Gender, and Case, of the Pronouns:—

I love the boy who loves his lesson.

I dislike these idle fellows.

Charles and David are the best wrestlers, but the worst scholars in their respective classes.

The girl who gained the third prize last year is the head of her class this year: she deserves the highest praise.

Many children, whose parents are poor, attain to learning, wealth and honour.

Good character, and good education, are surer roads to eminence than either large estates or illustrious birth.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN.



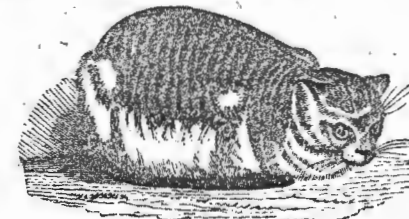
Starting on a Journey.

Write sentences showing the inflections of the personal pronouns in number, and case.



The Steam-Boat.

Write sentences showing the inflections of the relative pronouns in case.



The Domestic Cat.

Write sentences showing the inflections of the demonstrative pronouns in number.



The Shepherd.

Write sentences showing the inflections of the personal, and adjective pronouns.

THE VERB.

What are the names of the following parts of the Verb?

Writing, learned, to love, run, flattering, hasten, hastened, to move, defeated, conquering, *strike* but *hear* me, come and try, come to try, hating, defended.

Regular Verbs to be inflected after the manner of "to love."

Ask, attend, bestow, cancel, command, commend, conquer, defend, dismiss, finish, gain, guard, learn, order, please, pray, prohibit, restore, walk.

Irregular Verbs, to be inflected after the manner of "to write."

Begin, blow, choose, draw, fall, freeze, fly, give, go, hide, know, lade, lie, slide, take, wear, weave.

Tell the Person, Number, Mood, and Tense, of

I struck; he is; we have; thou lovest; thou art; I had; we were; I wrote; thou abodest; ye brought; I cast; you thrust; they shall; we would; they are; thou hast; I bled; I am; they fled; we shone; they wept; he were; you were.

I have written. He should fear. We had loved. You shall be writing. They may flatter. They are smitten. It is sold. They could read. We should have finished. They were beaten. I do say. They will come. We had been playing. Thou hast been trifling. They are hastening. They might rejoice. You can speak.

I do speak. Thou art writing. He shall have commanded. We did read. You might work. They had finished. Thou hast heard. We may run. I had been sailing. You shall be walking. I might have been toiling. I can stop. He is injured. They were struck. He could have hastened. We have been rejoicing. They had been beaten.

Parse the following passages, not only naming the parts of Speech, but telling their Case, Tense, &c.

He is the temperate man, whose health directs his appetite; who is best pleased with what best agrees with him; who eats, not to gratify his taste, but to preserve his life; who is the same at every table as at his own; who when he feasts is not cloyed; and sees all the delicacies before him that luxury can accumulate, yet preserves a due abstinence amidst them.

La Roche was a protestant clergyman of Switzerland. He was a devout man, as became his profession. He possessed devotion in all its warmth, but with none of its asperity; I mean that asperity which men, called devout, sometimes indulge in. Affliction for the loss of a beloved wife brought on a long and lingering illness, for which

travelling was prescribed. His amiable daughter and only child was the companion of his travels. After an ineffectual and melancholy journey, he was returning home, when he was suddenly seized with a dangerous disorder, at a small town in France, where a celebrated British philosopher then resided.

The sorrow for the dead is the only sorrow from which we refuse to be divorced. Every other wound we seek to heal—every other affliction to forget; but this wound we consider it a duty to keep open—this affliction we cherish and brood over in solitude. Where is the mother who would willingly forget the infant that perished like a blossom from her arms, though every recollection is a pang? Where is the child that would willingly forget the most tender of parents, though to remember be but to lament? Who, even in the hour of agony, over whom he mourns?—Who, even when the tomb is closing upon the remains of her he most loved; when he feels his heart, as it were, crushed in the closing of its portal; would accept of consolation that must be bought by forgetfulness?—No, the love which survives the tomb is one of the noblest attributes of the soul.

At last

The clouds consign their treasures to the fields;
And, softly shaking o'er the dimpled pool
Prelusive drops, let all their moisture flow
In large effusion o'er the freshened world.
The stealing shower is scarce to patter heard
By such as wander through the forest walk
Beneath the umbrageous multitude of leaves.
But who can hold the shade while Heaven descends
In universal bounty, shedding herbs,
And fruits, and flowers, on Nature's ample lap!
Swift Fancy, fired, anticipates their growth;
And while the milky nutriment distils,
Beholds the kindling country colour round!

I'll prove the word that I have made my theme,
Is, that that may be *doubled* without blame,
And that that that thus *trebled* I may use;
And that that *that*, that critics may abuse,
May be correct. Farther the Dons to bother,
Five thats may closely follow one another!
For be it known that we may safely write,
Or say—That that *that* that that that man writ was right!
Nay ev'n, That that *that* that that that *that* has followed
Through *six* repeats, the grammar's rule has hallowed!
And that that *that*—that "that" that *that* began
Repeated *seven* times is right!—Deny't who can?

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN.

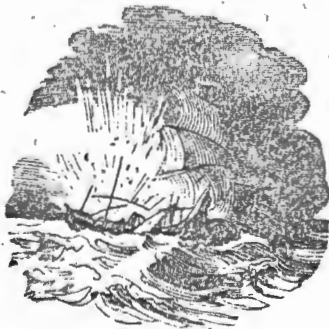


The Traveller.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to have*, in the *indicative mood*.

MODEL.

The traveller *has* his cloak drawn closely about him. He *had* a hat; but the wind blew it away. He *has had* hot sunshine on the plain; he *will have* rough winds to encounter in ascending the mountain; but when he *shall have had* the perseverance to reach the summit, all his toils will be amply rewarded.



A Sea Fight.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to have* in the *potential mood*.



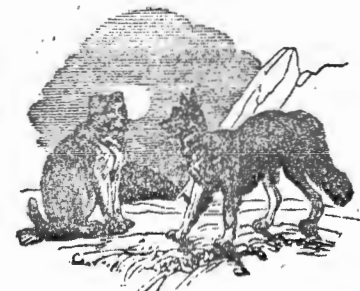
The Eagle and the Tortoise.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to have*, in the *imperative, subjunctive, and infinitive moods*.



The Bear and the Travellers.

Write sentences introducing the *participles* of the verb *to have*.



The Dog and the Wolf.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to be*, in the *indicative mood*.



The Eagle, the Cat, and the Hog.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to be*, in the *potential*, and *imperative* moods.



The Shipwreck.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of the verb *to be*, in the *subjunctive* mood.



The Fox and the Stork.

Write sentences introducing the *participles* of the verb *to be*.



A Battle.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *regular verbs* in the *indicative* mood.



The General.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *regular verbs* in the *potential* mood.



The Assassin.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *regular verbs* in the *subjunctive* mood.



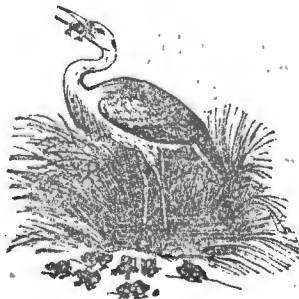
The Crow and the Pitcher.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *regular verbs* in the *imperative* and *infinitive moods*.



The Prisoner.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *irregular verbs* in the *indicative mood*.



The Stork and the Frogs.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *irregular verbs* in the *potential mood*.



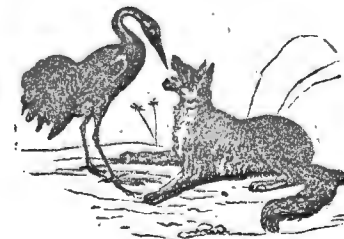
A Battle.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *irregular* and *regular verbs* in the *subjunctive mood*.



Death of Wat Tyler.

Write sentences illustrating the *inflections* of *irregular verbs* in the *imperative* and *infinitive moods*.



The Wolf and the Crane.

Write sentences illustrating the *participles* of *regular* and *irregular verbs*.

III. DERIVATION.

167. Derivation is that part of Etymology which treats of the *Origin* and *Primary Signification* of Words.

[As this part of Etymology forms a distinct subject of study, in a great measure unconnected with the usual routine of grammatical instruction, it has been separated from the remainder of this Treatise, and thrown into the Appendix, for the greater convenience of Teachers and Pupils.]

PART III.

SYNTAX.

168. *Syntax* treats of the construction and arrangement of words in a sentence.

169. A *Sentence* is a number of words so arranged as to form a complete proposition.

Thus the words, "A boy too fond of play," do not form a sentence, because they do not contain a distinct proposition. But, "A boy too fond of play often neglects his lessons," is a sentence.

170. Sentences are divided into *Simple* and *Complex*.

171. A *simple sentence* consists of one proposition; as, "Time flies swiftly." "The music of birds and the perfume of flowers filled the grove."

172. A *complex sentence* consists of two or more propositions combined, and the propositions of which it is composed are called *members*, or *clauses*; as,

"James, though he had read many books, was not a good scholar."

173. The clauses of a complex sentence are either *principal* or *parenthetical*.

174. The *principal* clause contains the leading proposition of the sentence, upon which the other clauses or members depend.

167. What is derivation? 168. What is Syntax? 169. What is a sentence? 170. How are sentences divided? 171. What is a simple sentence? 172. What is a complex sentence? 173. How are the clauses of a complex sentence divided? 174. What is the principal clause?

175. A *parenthetical*, or *secondary* clause, is that which depends on the principal clause, and generally modifies its meaning. Thus in the following sentences the clauses in italics are *parenthetical*:—

"If George would be studious, he would gain the prize. He fails, because he is indolent."

176. Parenthetical or dependent clauses are sometimes divided into *Adjective*, *Relative*, *Participial*, *Connective*, *Interjective*, *Absolute*, &c.

177. An *adjective* clause is introduced by an adjective; as, "A man, diligent in his business, prospers."

178. A *relative* clause is introduced by a relative pronoun; as,

"A man, who is diligent in his business, prospers."

179. A *participial* clause is introduced by a participle; as, "A man, devoted to his business, prospers."

180. A *connective* clause is introduced by a conjunction; as, "A man will generally prosper, if he be attentive to his business."

181. An *absolute* clause is independent of the rest of the sentence, in grammatical construction, as it includes what is called the *Nominative Case Absolute*; as,

"The lecture being ended, the audience departed."

182. A sentence is composed of a *Subject* and a *Predicate*.

183. The *subject* of a sentence is that concerning which something is affirmed in the sentence.

184. The *predicate* expresses that which is affirmed of the subject:

Thus, in the sentence, "The man walks," "*the man*" is the *subject*, and "*walks*" is the *predicate*.

A distinction is made between the *grammatical* and the *logical* subject

175. What is a parenthetical clause? 176. How are parenthetical clauses divided? 177. What is an adjective clause? — Give an example. Why is this an adjective clause? 178. What is a relative clause? — Give an example. Why is this a relative clause? 179. What is a participial clause? — Give an example. Why is this a participial clause? 180. What is a connective clause? — Give an example. Why is this a connective clause? 181. What is an absolute clause? — Give an example. Why is this an absolute clause? 182. What are the elements of a sentence? 183. What is the subject of a sentence? 184. What is the predicate of a sentence? — Give examples. What distinction?

of a proposition. The grammatical subject of a proposition is the leading nominative case of the sentence which expresses the proposition. The logical subject includes the nominative case, and the word or words by which its meaning is limited or modified.

185. The subject may be expressed:—

1. By a single noun; as,
"George reads."
2. By two or more nouns; as,
"George and Henry read."
3. By a pronoun or pronouns; as,
"I walk." "You and I are friends."
4. By a noun, joined with other words, to limit or modify its meaning; as,
"A careful and studious boy will excel."
"A man in a passion forgets the dictates of reason."
5. By the infinitive; as,
"To deceive was his object."
6. By sentences, and clauses of sentences; as,
"Remember St. Bartholomew," was passed from man to man."
"To gain freedom was the grand object."

In all these instances the words printed in Italics are complex names of the subject spoken of in their respective sentences. They are therefore equivalent to nouns; and were there single words in the language capable of expressing them, these words would be nouns.

186. The *predicate* of a sentence must always contain one verb: it may contain more than one, besides other parts of speech.

The following are instances of verbs, and restrictive clauses, used as predicates;—

- "The army retreated."
"The army retreated in disorder."
"The army retreated in disorder, leaving its baggage and wounded in the hands of the enemy."

187. When the verb of the sentence is transitive, it has joined with it a word or words describing the *object* of the verb; as,

tion is made? 185. How may the subject be expressed? 186. What must the predicate contain?—Give examples. 187. When the verb of the sentence is transitive, what has it joined with it? 188. How

"John shot the *bird*."

"The knight claimed his *prisoner*."

188. The object is often expressed by an infinitive, and also by a sentence or part of a sentence; as,

"William loves to *learn*."

"We should remember that *we are fallible*."

RULES OF SYNTAX.

189. The *Rules of Syntax* respect either the construction or the arrangement of words in a sentence.

Construction respects the form which words assume, in order to combine grammatically with other words in the same sentence.

Arrangement respects the order in which words stand in a sentence.

I. RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

SUBJECT AND VERB.

190. RULE I. The subject of a sentence, when a noun or pronoun, is always in the nominative case; and the verb is always of the same number and person with its subject.

1. When the subject, or nominative, denotes only one thing, the verb is put in the singular; as,
"John *speaks* eloquently."
"He *is* mistaken."
"John or James *intends* to accompany me."
"Cæsar, as well as Cicero, *was* remarkable for his eloquence."
"Either he or she *is* wrong."
"To forgive *is* divine."
"That such a misfortune should befall your house, and mar your prospects, *grieves* me exceedingly."

* It is an error to say, as is commonly done, that when different subjects are disjoined by a conjunction they are always followed by a verb in the singular; for the predicate may be applied to the different subjects, and therefore may contain a plural verb. Thus we usually say, "Neither you nor I are in fault,"—not "'is' or 'am' in fault." The Latin idiom is the same: "Id neque ego, neque tu, fecimus."

may the object be expressed? 189. What do the rules of syntax respect? What does construction respect? What does arrangement refer to? 190. What is the rule for the nominative case and the verb?—Give examples. When is the verb in the singular?—

2. When the subject, or nominative, denotes more than one, the verb is put in the plural; as,

"The birds *carol*."

"They *are* mistaken."

"Demosthenes and Cicero *were* great orators."

"Honour, justice, religion itself, *were* derided by these profligate wretches."

"He and she *go* in company."

"To be temperate in eating and drinking, to use exercise in the open air, and to preserve the mind free from tumultuous emotions, *are* the best preservatives of health."

3. Collective nouns are followed by a verb in the singular or plural, according as the idea of unity or plurality is meant to be expressed; as,

"The army *is* on its march."

"The clergy *are* divided among themselves."

The person of the subject, or nominative, determines the person of the verb; as,

"I *am* at my post."

"Thou *shalt* not steal."

"John *reads* his lesson."

Nouns are always of the third person, except when they are employed to name the person addressed; in which case they are of the second person; as,

"Our Father *who art* in Heaven."

Relative pronouns are of the same person with their correlatives; as,

"I *who am* now present."

"Thou, Lord, *who knowest* the heart."

"The Lord *who seeth* us."

Infinitives, and parts of sentences which are employed as nominatives to verbs, are always reckoned of the third person; as,

"To be afraid to do evil *is* true courage."

"For sinners to be proud *is* the height of inconsistency."

OBJECT.

191. RULE II. The *object* of a transitive verb, when expressed by a noun, or pronoun, is put in the *objective* case; as,

When is the verb in the plural?—Give examples. What is the rule for collective nouns?—Give examples. What determines the person of the verb?—Give examples. When are nouns in the second, and when in the third person?—Give examples. What is the rule for the person of relative pronouns?—Give examples. In what person are infinitives, and parts of sentences, when employed as nominatives?—Give examples. 191. What is the rule for the object? 192. What is the

"If ye love *me*, keep my *commandments*."

"This is the man *whom* the king delighteth to honour."

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

192. RULE III. When two nouns, or a noun and pronoun are used to denote the possessor and the thing possessed, the name of the possessor is put in the *possessive* case; as,

"In my *Father's* house."

"On *eagles'* wings."

"*Thine* is the kingdom."

"The child *whose* father is dead."

1. When the name of the possessor is a complex noun, or a noun made up of two or more words, the last mentioned word only receives the sign of the possessive case; as,

"*Julius Cæsar's* Commentaries."

"*John the Baptist's* head."

"*Oliver & Boyd's* printing-office."

2. The name of the thing possessed, when it is obvious, is often omitted; as,

"He went to see *St. Peter's*, at Rome;" that is, St. Peter's Church.

"I am going to the *magistrate's*;" that is, the magistrate's house.

193. RULE IV. Nouns or personal pronouns, when added to other nouns or pronouns, to explain them, are put in the same case with them by *apposition*; as,

"*Paul* the *Apostle* wrote to the Romans."

"The *leader* was taken, *he* who defied the law."

"Brutus killed *Cæsar*, *him* who had been his friend."

194. RULE V. Pronouns agree with their correlatives in gender, number, and person; as,

"The *queen* put on *her* royal apparel."

"The *river* is swollen; it overflows *its* banks."

"The *trees* have lost *their* foliage."

"*Thou* *who art* mighty."

"The *boy* *who* writes the letter."

"The *letter* *which* is written."

* Formerly *which* was used in the masculine and feminine, as well as in the neuter gender, and consequently joined with persons as well

rule respecting the possessive case? What is the rule for complex nouns? When is the name of the thing possessed omitted? 193. What is the rule for apposition?—Give examples. 194. What is the rule for pronouns, and their correlatives?—Give examples. What is

1. When the correlative of the pronoun is a clause, or part of a sentence, the pronoun is put in the neuter gender, singular number, and third person; as,

"It grieves me to hear of your illness."

"She was over indulgent to her children, which is a sin."

2. When a pronoun relates to two nouns or pronouns in different persons collectively, it takes the first person plural in preference to the second; and the second in preference to the third; as,

"He and I shared it between us."

"You and John are welcome; I rejoice to see you both."

"You and he and I have our difficulties."

"You and he have your doubts."

195. RULE VI. The pronoun *it*, when the nominative to a verb, is often used indefinitely, and is applied to persons as well as to things; to the first person and second, as well as to the third; and to a plural as well as to a singular; as,

"It is the king."

"It is I, be not afraid."

"It was you who did it."

"It is these fetters that vex me."

196. RULE VII. The adjective pronouns *this* and *that*, agree in number with the nouns which they describe; as,

"This book," "that map," "these books," "those maps."

This rule is violated in such expressions as, "these kind of people," "those sort of things."

1. *Every*, though generally construed with a singular noun, is joined to a plural noun when the things it denotes are conceived as forming an aggregate; as, "every twelve years;" that is, every period of twelve years.

2. *All* is joined with a singular noun, when it refers to quantity, and with a plural noun when it refers to number; as,

"Six days shalt thou labour and do all thy work."

"All men are mortal."

as things. Such expressions as "mighty men which were of old," are common in the authorized version of the Scriptures; indeed, there are not many instances in the English Bible of *who*, applied to persons.

the rule when the correlative of a pronoun is a clause or part of a sentence? — Give examples. What is the rule when a pronoun refers to two nouns or pronouns in different persons? — Give examples. 195. What is the rule respecting the pronoun *it*? — Give examples. 196. What is the rule respecting *this* and *that*? — Give examples. How is this rule violated? What is the remark respecting *every*? — Give examples. — What is the remark respecting *all*? — Give examples.

3. *Many*, though significant of plurality, is sometimes construed with a noun in the singular; as,

"Many a flower is born to blush unseen."

4. *More*, when the comparative of *much*, and denoting a greater quantity, is joined with a noun in the singular; but when the comparative of *many*, and denoting a greater number, it is joined with a noun in the plural; as, "more fruit;" "more men."

ARTICLE.

197. RULE VIII. The indefinite article, *a* or *an*, is prefixed to nouns in the singular number; as, *a* horse; *an* orange.

198. RULE IX. The definite article, *the*, may be prefixed to nouns in the singular or plural number; as, *the* horse, *the* oranges.

1. *A*, when combined with the numerals *many* and *few*, admits a noun in the plural; as, "*a* few persons, *a* great *many* men."

2. *A* is used before words beginning with a consonant, the long sound of *a*, and vowels sounding like *w*. *An* is used before words beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*; as,

"*A* boy;" "*a* unicorn;" "*many a* one."

"*An* acorn;" "*an* hour."

3. When two or more nouns or adjectives, descriptive of the same thing, are joined together, the article is prefixed only to the first of them; if the nouns describe different things, the article is prefixed to each of them separately; as

"I bought a black and white cow, which cost twelve pounds."

"I bought a black and a white cow, which cost *each* twelve pounds."

VERBS.

199. RULE X. Some transitive verbs, as, *give*, *tell*, *send*, *promise*, *allow*, admit two objective cases after them, the one denoting the object and the other the person; as,

What is the remark respecting *many*? — Give examples. — Respecting *more*? — Give examples. 197. What is the rule respecting the indefinite article? — Give examples. 198. What is said of prefixing the definite article? — Give examples. What is the rule for the article with respect to two or more nouns or adjectives descriptive of the same thing? — Give examples. 199. What is the rule for two objective cases after a transitive verb? — Give examples. What is the rule for an

"He gave it *me*."*

"He sent it *us*."*

"He allowed *me* great *liberty*."*

"He promised *us* many *benefits*."*

The same verbs, especially in colloquial discourse, admit an objective case after the passive voice; as,

"I was allowed great *liberty*."

"She was offered *them* by her mother."

"He was forbid the *presence* of the king."

200. RULE XI. The verb *to be* has the same case after it as before it; as,

"It is *I*, be not afraid."

"It is *he*."

"You believed it to be *him*."

"Whom do they represent *me* to be."

201. RULE XII. The *infinitive* of a verb is always preceded by the sign *to*, except when it follows the verbs, *bid*, *dare*, *feel*, *hear*, *let*, *need*, *make*, *see*, or the generic verbs, *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, and *must*; as,

"He ordered *me to hasten*."

"He bade *me go*."

"I saw him *strike the boy*."

Dare, when it signifies to challenge or defy, is also construed with *to*; as,

"I dare thee but *to breathe* upon my love."

In the English version of the Bible, the verb *to make* is similarly construed; as,

"He maketh his sun *to rise*."

202. RULE XIII. Participles, when they retain the sense of the verb, are construed as the verbs to which they belong; but when they are employed as nouns, they are followed by *of*; as,

"He is well situated for *gaining wisdom*."

"He is well situated for *the gaining of wisdom*."

* It is not improbable that all these expressions are elliptical; the preposition *to* being understood before the personal pronouns.

objective case after a passive verb? — Give examples. 200. What case has the verb *to be* after it? — Give examples. 201. When is the infinitive not preceded by the sign *to*? — Give examples. What is said of *dare*? — Of *make*? 202. What is the rule for participles? — Give

203. RULE XIV. Participles, when used as nouns, or as parts of complex nouns, are frequently preceded by a noun or pronoun in the possessive case; as,

"I am averse to the nation's *involving itself in war*."

204. RULE XV. When a noun or pronoun is joined with a participle, without being dependent on any other word in the sentence, it is put in the *nominative* case; as,

"*We being* exceedingly tossed, they lightened the ship."

This construction is commonly called the *nominative absolute*.

The imperfect participle, without being connected with a noun or pronoun, often introduces an absolute clause, as an adjunct to a sentence; as,

"Generally *speaking*, the people are industrious."

"It is not possible to act otherwise, *considering* the weakness of our nature."

The infinitive is also sometimes used in an absolute, or independent sense; as,

"*To speak* the truth, we are all liable to error."

PREPOSITIONS.

205. RULE XVI. The *object* of a preposition, when expressed by a noun or pronoun, is put in the *objective* case; as,

"He came behind *me*."

"The man with *whom* you are acquainted."

The preposition *to* is often omitted, especially after the adverbs *nigh*, *near*, &c., and before the personal pronouns; as,

"He came *near the city*," that is, "*near to the city*."

"He sent *me the book*," that is, "*to me*."

CONJUNCTIONS.

206. RULE XVII. Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case; as,

"*You and I* are schoolfellows."

"The master struck *him* and not *me*."

examples. 203. When does a participle govern the possessive case? — Give examples. 204. What is the rule for the nominative case absolute? — Give examples. 205. What is the rule for prepositions governing the objective case? — Give examples. When is *to* omitted? — Give examples. 206. What do conjunctions connect? — Give examples.

"You may do it as easily as I."

"He will as soon punish you as me."

"You are older than I."

"I love you better than him."

"Better it should be yours than mine."

Than was formerly used as a preposition, and took an objective case after it. When joined with a relative pronoun, it still retains its character of preposition; as,

"Alfred, *than whom* a better king never reigned."

207. RULE XVIII. Some conjunctions are employed as correlatives to each other; thus,

Both is followed by *and*; as, "*Both you and I* did it."

Either, by *or*; as, "I will *either* come *or* send."

Neither, by *nor*; as, "*Neither John nor James* is fit for it."

Though or although, by *yet*; as, "*Though* he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him."

Whether, by *or*; as, "*Whether* he go *or* stay."

In like manner, the conjunction *that* follows the adverb *so*, and the adjective *such*, when it denotes "so great;" as,

"You have *so* incensed him *that* he will punish you."

"Their arrogance was *such*, *that* even good men turned away in disgust."

The adverbs *not only*, and *not merely*, are often followed by the conjunction *but*, in connexion with *also* or *likewise*; as,

"He was *not only* harmless, *but* he was *also* wise."

208. RULE XIX. The generic verbs are often omitted before specific verbs, when preceded by the conjunctions, *if*, *though*, *unless*, &c.; as,

"*Though* he *slay* me," that is, "*though* he *should* *slay* me."

"*If* thou *be* afflicted, *repine* not," that is, "*if* thou *shouldst* *be* afflicted."

* Such phraseologies as, "he slay," "thou be," &c., are generally considered as indicating the subjunctive mood; that is, the form of the verb peculiar to clauses which are subjoined to others by means of the conjunctions, *if*, *though*, &c. But it is plain that these conjunctions exercise no influence over the verb. The reason of the peculiar form is, that the idea of contingency is present to the mind of the speaker or writer, and is meant to be expressed—(the same reason, indeed, that gives rise to the use of the conjunctions themselves in these cases.) Ac-

207. What conjunctions are employed as correlatives? — Give examples. What is said of *so* and *that*? 208. When are the generic verbs

INTERJECTIONS.

209. RULE XX. Interjections are joined with the objective case of the pronoun of the first person, and with the nominative of the pronoun of the second; as, "Ah me!" "Oh ye hypocrites!"

EXERCISES ON CONSTRUCTION.

Distinguish between complete, and imperfect Sentences.

Sudden trust. Sudden trust brings sudden repentance. If the mountain will not go to Mahomet. If the mountain will not go to Mahomet, let Mahomet go to the mountain. If it were not for hope. If it were not for hope, the heart would break. In a calm sea. In a calm sea, every man is a pilot. The easiest way to dignity. The easiest way to dignity is humility. When bread is wanting. When bread is wanting, oaten cakes are excellent. Mildness governs more. Mildness governs more than anger. Deride not the unfortunate. Wine has drowned more than the sea. Reprove thy friend privately; commend him publicly. Being reprov'd. Being reprov'd, James began to reform. The ship having sail'd. The ship sail'd. The ship having sail'd, the insurance was effected.

Distinguish Simple from Complex Sentences; and, in the latter, Principal from Secondary Clauses.

Successful guilt is the bane of society. Depend not on fortune, but conduct. Idle folks have the most labour. If the counsel be good, no matter who gave it. He who teaches often learns himself. Where content is, there is a feast. Rewards and punishments are the basis of good government. He that lends to all who will borrow, shows great good will, but little wisdom. He that spares when he is young, may spend when he is old. If you wish a thing done, go; if not, send. Though James studies hard, he enjoys the play-hour. Having completed his lessons, he claims his recreation.

cordingly, the form of the verb is the same when contingency is expressed, whether the conjunctions be used or not. "Be you present, or be you absent, I will speak," is as grammatical as "Whether you be present or absent." Besides, it is to be observed, that when certainty, and not contingency, is expressed, the verb does not take this elliptical form, though preceded by *if*, *though*, &c.

omitted? — Give examples. 209. What is the rule for interjections? — Give examples.

Give their appropriate Names to the Secondary Clauses, in the following Sentences.

It is a poor art that maintains not the artisan. One that is perfectly idle is perfectly weary too, and knows not what he would have or do. He that gives to a grateful man, puts out to usury. A mechanic, well skilled in his trade, has his fortune in his hand. A rich man, careless in his expenditures, soon comes to poverty. The pilot, knowing the dangers of the coast, kept off the shore. The traveller, having explored the country, returned home. The enemy being fairly beaten, we kept the field.

Oh! sweet and beautiful is night, when the silver moon is high,
And countless stars, like clustering gems, hang sparkling in the sky,
While the balmy breath of the summer breeze comes whispering down
the glen,
And one sweet voice alone is heard — Oh! night is lovely then.

But when that voice in feeble moans of sickness and of pain,
But mocks the anxious ear that strives to catch its sounds in vain,
When silently we watch the bed, by the taper's flickering light,
While all we love is fading fast — how terrible is night!

Distinguish between the Subject and the Predicate, in the following Sentences; also point out the Object, where it occurs.

The daylight is fading fast. The sun has set. Many hands make light work. To borrow on usury brings sudden beggary. The man that is happy in all things, is more rare than the Phoenix. Time flies swiftly. Time lost is never recovered. Church bells were brought into use in the beginning of the fifth century. The raisins brought from Damascus are remarkable for their size. George and I are in the same class. Wealth, honour, and ease, are the rewards of persevering industry. A conscience void of offence is a rich possession. A man came to the door, entered the house, and soon expelled the inmates. A great warrior, without a sense of justice, commits many wrongs. The love of praise is a powerful incentive to action. The great discoverer of America, with all his claims to the gratitude of his sovereign, was permitted to die in obscurity and want.

Sentences to be corrected. — (See Rule I.)

Many men is deceived by false appearances. The state of our affairs are very prosperous. There is, in fact, no servants in the house. Temperance and moderate exercise preserves health. Is your

father and mother at home? Either danger or fear have brought you here. Cæsar as well as Cicero were distinguished for eloquence. The navy form our natural bulwark, and have often proved our defence in time of peril. The youth is not so well educated in this country now as formerly. Either John or his brother go to town to-day. What avails the highest professions, if the life is not in accordance with them? A variety of circumstances are to be taken into account. My brother and him are tolerable scholars.

————— O thou my lips inspire,
Who touch'd Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire.

These are the men who makes long speeches. The terms are as moderate as is consistent with any profit. Has the goods been sold to advantage? America and thee did in each other live. To honour your parents, to reverence your teachers, and to be obliging to your school-fellows, is the sure way to preferment. Sorrows, like a flood, overwhelms me. The possession of our senses entire, of our limbs uninjured, of a sound understanding, of friends and companions, though often overlooked among the many blessings which we enjoy, deserve our liveliest gratitude.

Sentences to be filled up with Verbs.

There two essential words in language. The first the noun, or word by which a thing named; the second the verb, which the state or action of a thing. Fifty pounds of wheat forty pounds of flour. The mechanism of clocks and watches unknown to the ancients. In him happily blended true dignity, with softness of manners. To live soberly, righteously, and godly, required of all men. Religion, vital religion, the religion of the heart, the true source of virtue. Without a holy life, what mere professions of excellence? Neither of them able to do otherwise. either of them then to blame? His wisdom, and not his riches, admiration. His having so often offended the reason why he so severely punished. The mother, with her family, left the neighbourhood. Their religion, as well as their manners, ridiculed. Town or country equally agreeable to me. Do thou, Lord, who above all, come to our aid. Will the Lord, who above all, come to our aid? That your conduct so inconsistent, most distressing. I am the general officer who the orders to-day. I who the orders to-day am a general officer.

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rule II.)

Such folly will ruin ye both. Who have I reason to love, if not my father? He and they we know; but whom are you? They, who worth and rank has exalted, deserves our respect. He sent they who he thought to belong to his party. He invited my cousin and I to spend the holidays at his house. They that I rebuke before all. You should punish the guilty person, not I who is innocent. Whatever others do, let you and I perform our part.

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rules II. to VII.)

The Duke's of Roxburgh forest. The king's of Great Britain's prerogative. Thy fathers virtue is not thine. It was the men, women, and children's lot to suffer much affliction. Moses rod was turned into a serpent. I called at the bookseller. I had the surgeon, the physician, and the apothecary's assistance. The king and queen put on his robes. Can any one be sure that their own trials will not overcome them. Behold the Moon! how brightly she shines; yet the light is not its own. He had a companion which corrupted him. The Despot was like a beast of prey, who destroys without pity. Spare thou them, O God, which confess their sins. There is not a state of Europe who does not keep a body of troops in their pay. John and you have taken it to themselves. My father and I enjoy their meal together. You have taken our portion from James and me; send it them immediately. They were the heretics that first began to rail. It were they that were the real offenders. Lie that book upon the table and there let it lay. He has laid in bed all the morning.

Sentences to be filled up with Pronouns. — (Rules II. to VII.)

You were told was he; but the truth is, was I. Who is that calls my name at this rate: I will punish, be who he may. Females, duty it is not to mingle in public life, have own part assigned. I do not think any one should incur censure for being tender of reputation. My brother and I love occupation. A friend has sent John and you the present, in token of his love to. He had an acquaintance poisoned his principles. The horse and his rider, came yesterday have departed to-day. They take the sun out of the world, take friendship out of it. She took goodly raiment, was in the house, and put upon Jacob. He is a Nero, is another name for cruelty.

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rules VII. — VIII. — IX.)

This noble nation has, of all others, admitted fewer corruptions. I have not been from home this twenty years. These sort of person disregard public opinion. Instead of improving yourself, you have been trifling this two hours. How beautiful an house! it is a hospital for orphans. Every one of his letters bear this date. Every man's daily walk and conversation displays his character. Neither of these persons seem to think it possible for them to err. Each in their turn receives the benefits to which they are entitled. These are the kind of enjoyments that good men aspire after. He pronounced an eulogium upon the departed statesman. Each of us have got some money. None of the British soldiers were able to do it.

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rules X. — XVI.)

He is really the person who he appears to be. It may be him, but it cannot be me. I understood it to be he. It might have been her; but there is no proof of it. I know not who has done this kindness to me, unless it be him who has so often assisted me before. It is better live on little than outlive a great deal. I need not to solicit to do a kind action. This was betraying of the trust reposed in him. I cannot help regarding him as an enemy, and thou as a deceitful friend. He prepared them for the event by sending early intelligence. By reading of good books, we are sure to improve both our mind and our morals. Him who was the most powerful having been defeated, the conquest of the rest was easy.

The bleating sheep with my complaints agree,
Them parched with heat, and me inflamed by thee.

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rule XVI.)

It is for I that the gift is intended. It is not you who I am displeased with. Do you know who you speak to? What fellowship ought there to be between ye, who are holy, and they who are wicked? From he that is needy turn not away. Who didst thou obtain such strange information from?

Sentences to be corrected. — (Rules XVII. — XVIII. — XIX.)

A great intimacy subsist between him and I. You and me have enjoyed many a pleasant excursion together. Neither he nor her can answer. It is neither high or low. I must be so plain to tell you, that you have misapprehended it altogether. He was as distin-

glushed in his profession as he imagined. He would not speak himself, nor let any other speak. So ill-informed is the boy, that he is qualified for nothing. I gained a son, and such a son as all men hailed me happy. There was something so touching in the manner in which he told his misfortunes, as affected me more than I can express. If he does but touch the mountains, they will smoke. Though he robs me of my all, I shall not be able to hate him. If a man smite his servant, and he dies, he shall surely be put to death. Though God be high, yet he hath respect to the lowly.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES ON CONSTRUCTION.

Correct the Errors in the following Sentences.

Self-denial, and devotedness to God, is the soul of real religion. Neither of them are to be dispensed with. The story was no sooner told, but it was universally believed. All the power of ridicule, and by the desertion of friends, and the loss of his estate, were not able to conquer his spirit. Be ready to assist such deserving persons who appear to be destitute of friends. Every friend who we confide in change but God. It is not the uttering or the hearing certain words that constitute prayer to God. The climate of England is not so pleasant as those of France, Spain, or Italy.

The concourse of people were so great as that with great difficulty we passed through them. He has already made great progress in his studies; and, if his diligence continues, he will soon fulfil the expectations of his friends. It is amazing his propensity to this vice, against every principle of interest and honour. Whether virtue advances our worldly interest or no, we must follow her dictates. I have seldom seen such a beautiful flower. I have seldom seen so beautiful flowers. I doubt not but that he will fulfil his promise. On your future conduct depend your future happiness or misery. Was you present when the detail of his toils and sufferings were laid before the meeting? Lycurgus, the Spartan lawgiver, he forbade the coining any metal more precious than iron. By the pupil's attainments are the preceptor honoured, and the pupils themselves encouraged. Not one in a hundred of those who scoff at the Gospel of Christ, know what it is they scoff at. Virtue pursues the lofty tenor of its ways, whatever be the difficulty that encompasses it; and sooner or later it will have its reward. The more I see of his character, I like him better. It is not only the interest, but duty of youth to reverence their parents. The captain had several men died in his ship. The Chinese language contains an immense number of words; who, therefore, would learn them must possess a powerful verbal memory. The sacrifices that virtue makes will not

only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed even here. There is nothing men are more ignorant of, or which they less understand, than their own characters. This is one of the Divine precepts which is entitled to special reverence.

Death's sable shades at once o'ercast their eyes,
In dust the vanquished and the victor lies.

Though the manner of Thucydides be dry and harsh, yet, on great occasions, he display vast powers of description.

Supply the Blanks in the following Paragraphs.

I yesterday passed the whole afternoon in the churchyard, amusing with the tombstones and inscriptions I met with. Most of them recorded nothing else of the buried person, that he born upon one day, and upon another; the whole history of his life comprehended in those two circumstances, that common to mankind. I could not but look upon these registers of existence, brass or marble, as a kind of satire upon the departed persons, had left no other memorial, that they born and they died.

When I look upon the tombs of great, every emotion of envy dies in ; when I read the epitaphs of the beautiful, every inordinate desire out; when meet with the grief of parents upon a tombstone, heart with compassion; when I see the tomb of the parents, I consider the vanity of grieving for those we must quickly follow: when I see kings lying by those who deposed them, I consider rival wits placed side by side, or the holy men that divided the world with contests and disputes, reflect, with sorrow and astonishment, on the little competitions, factions, and debates of mankind.

When I read the several dates of the tombs, — of some died yesterday, and some six hundred years ago, I consider great day when we all of be contemporaries, and our appearance together.

Whatever the dispositions, the faculties of the child, whether earlier later in life, the business of father nor masters can proceed wisely well, without the co-operation of the mother. Who knows so well as the road to the understanding, the road the heart? Who has skill like , to encourage the timid and repress the ? has power and address like a mother's subdue the stubborn and confirm the irresolute? Who with such exquisite art draw out, put in motion, and direct ordinary or superior powers; place goodness in fairest and attractive light, and expose in its most hideous

forbidding form? In the case of those persons have unhappily deviated from the path of virtue, how many been stopped, converted, brought back, by consideration of maternal feelings, and the recollection of early lessons, and principles, and resolutions! Having been trained up, when a child, in the way wherein should walk, the man calls to remembrance in old age, returns to, and from no more.

Hyenas generally inhabit caverns, and other rocky places, whence they issue, under cover of the night, to prowl for food. They gregarious, not so much from any social principle, from a greediness of disposition, and a gluttonous instinct, which many to assemble even over a scanty and insufficient prey. They are said devour the bodies they find in cemeteries, and to disinter as hastily or imperfectly inhumed. seems, indeed, to be a peculiar gloominess and malignity of disposition in the aspect of the hyena, and manners, in a state of captivity, are savage and untractable. Like every other animal, however, is perfectly capable of being tamed.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN BY THE PUPIL.



The Travellers.

Write *simple sentences* illustrative of this picture.

MODEL.

The travellers have found a purse. They will divide the money. One of the travellers holds the purse. He is kneeling. The other traveller claims his part. They may quarrel. Money is the source of many contentions.



Aesop and the Boys.

Write *simple sentences* illustrating this picture.



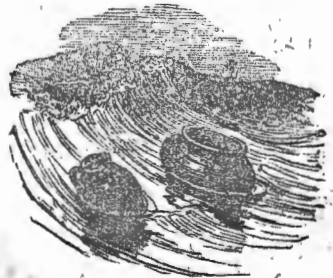
The Prince instructed.

Write *simple and complex sentences* illustrative of this picture.



The Fox and the Rat.

Write *complex sentences* illustrative of this picture, introducing some of the different kinds of complex sentences, as *adjective, relative, &c.*



The two Pots.

Write sentences illustrating Rule I. (the *Subject* and the *Verb*).



The Prince shown to the People by the King.

Write sentences illustrating the *second observation* under Rule I.



A General leading an Army to Battle.

Write sentences illustrating the *third observation* under Rule I, respecting *collective nouns*.



Birds of Prey.

Write sentences illustrating Rule II. (*Object*).



The Rescue.

Write sentences illustrating Rule III. (*Possessive case*).



Execution of Lady Jane Grey.

Write sentences illustrating Rule IV. (*Apposition*).



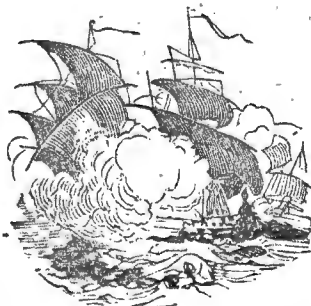
The Prisoner in danger.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule V.



Labour and Rest.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule VI.



An Engagement at Sea.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule VIII.



The Fox and the Frog.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule IX.



King John signing Magna Charta.

Write sentences illustrating Rule X.



The Petitioner.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XI.



Death of Cardinal Wolsey.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XII.



A windy Day.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XIII.

MODEL.

The man could not prevent the wind from *taking* off his wig. This will teach him the necessity of *tying* it on securely. He will be tired of *running* after it. He holds up his cane for the purpose of *catching* it.



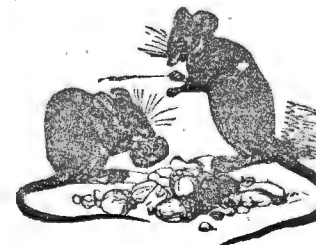
The Wolf and the Lamb.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XIV.



War.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XIV.



The Country Mouse entertaining the Town Mouse.

Write sentences illustrating Rule XV.



The Dead Bird.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XVI.



Edward, the Black Prince, with his Prisoner, the King of France.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XVII.



The Culpit.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XVIII.



The Captive.

Write sentences illustrative of Rules XIX., and XX.

II. RULES OF ARRANGEMENT.

210. The words of a sentence may be arranged either in the *Conventional* or *Rhetorical* order.

211. The *Conventional Order* is that arrangement of words which is most usual in the language.

212. The *Rhetorical Order* varies from the usual arrangement, for the purpose of rhetorical effect.

The conventional order is best suited for the ordinary purposes of speech; as, narration, description, and reasoning.

The rhetorical order is generally dictated by passion, emotion, or fancy, and belongs to the higher efforts of eloquence or poetry, or to those compositions where great attention is paid to rhetorical expression.

213. The following are some of the leading rules of arrangement.

SUBJECT AND VERB.

214. RULE XXI. In sentences *conventionally* arranged, the subject or nominative case precedes the verb, in all cases, except four; as, "*James walks*;" "*Time is precious*."

The following are the four exceptions to this rule:

1. When the sentence is interrogative; as,

"Are wealth and power necessary to happiness?"

2. When the sentence is imperative; as,

"Go thou to the prophet."

3. When the verb is preceded by *there*, *here*, *hence*, *then*, *thus*, *yet*, *so*, *nor*, *neither*, *such*, *herein*, *therein*, *wherein*, &c.; as,

"There was no rain."

"Here are the companies."

"Hence arise wars and convulsions."

4. A few phrases, such as, *said he*, *replied they*, are deviations from the general rule, which scarcely deserve notice.

215. RULE XXII. In sentences *rhetorically* arranged, the predicate often precedes the subject; as,

"Forgot were want, disease and death, by that impassioned throng."

210. How may the words of a sentence be arranged? 211. What is the conventional order? 212. What is the rhetorical order? What is the conventional order suited for?—What is the rhetorical order suited for? 214. What is the twenty-first rule? What are the four exceptions? 215. What is the twenty-second rule? 216. What is

VERB AND ITS OBJECT.

216. RULE XXIII. In sentences *conventionally* arranged, the transitive verb generally precedes its object; as,

"I tread reviving *passions* down."

Exception I. When the object is a relative pronoun, it generally precedes the verb; as,

"I am the man *whom* you seek."

Exception II. When the object is preceded by such words as, *whatsoever, whatever, &c.* it precedes the verb; as,

"Whatever he designs, he accomplishes."

217. RULE XXIV. In *rhetorical* sentences, the object, when emphatic, precedes the verb; as,

"Thy *fruit* full well the school-boy knows,
Wild bramble of the brake!"

This inversion often takes place in poetry; as,

"But suddenly a holy awe the vengeful *clamour* still'd."

"The spotted pestilence with war, awhile the *feast* had shared."

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

218. RULE XXV. In *conventional* sentences the adjective is generally placed immediately before the noun which it qualifies; as,

"An *old* man." "A *skilful* physician."

There are four exceptions to this rule; viz.

1. When the adjective is used as a title; as,

"Peter the *Great*." "Charles the *Twelfth*."

2. When there are several adjectives joined with the same noun; as,

"A statesman, *honest, capable, and faithful*."

3. When the adjective is modified by other words; as,

"A house *full of people*."

4. When the adjective expresses measure or extent; as,

"A man *six feet high*." "A plain *thirty miles square*."

219. RULE XXVI. In *rhetorical* sentences, the adjective often begins the sentence; as,

"*Dear* is my little native vale."

"*Sweet* is the remembrance of a virtuous deed."

the twenty-third rule? — What are the exceptions? 217. What is the twenty-fourth rule? 218. What is the twenty-fifth rule? — What are the exceptions? 219. What is the twenty-sixth rule? 220. What is

POSITION OF PRONOUNS.

220. RULE XXVII. When the personal pronouns come together, the pronoun of the second person is placed before that of the third; and the pronoun of the first person is placed after those of the second and third; as,

"*You* and *George* may remain here, *William* and *I* will go to the city."

221. RULE XXVIII. The relative pronouns, with their clauses, must be placed as near as possible to their antecedents.

Thus, in these lines, the relative is too far removed from the antecedent:

"The *rose* had been wash'd, just wash'd in a shower,
Which Mary to Anna convey'd."

POSITION OF THE INFINITIVE AND THE AUXILIARIES.

222. RULE XXIX. In *conventional* sentences the infinitive is placed after the verb on which it depends, though often separated from it by other words; as,

"I requested him *to return*."

"I requested him, if he valued my friendship, *to return*."

223. RULE XXX. In *rhetorical* sentences, the principal verb often precedes the auxiliary; as,

"*Go* you must, and *go* you shall, let the consequences be what they may."

"*Have* it he would, *cost* what it might."

POSITION OF ADVERBS.

224. RULE XXXI. In *conventional* sentences, adverbs should be placed as near as possible to the words they qualify. They are generally placed before adjectives, and often between the auxiliary and the principal verb; as,

"He was *greatly* mistaken."

"John has *never* been in Rome."

the twenty-seventh rule? 221. What is the twenty-eighth rule? 222. What is the twenty-ninth rule? 223. What is the thirtieth rule? 224. What is the thirty-first rule? 225. What is the thirty-second rule?

225. RULE XXXII. Adverbs, when emphatical, may introduce a sentence, and be separated from the words they are intended to qualify; as,

"Onward he went, regardless, of danger."

"Down, with a tremendous crash, fell the building."

POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

226. RULE XXXIII. The preposition is generally placed *immediately before* its object; but it is also not unfrequently placed *after* it, and even at a considerable distance from it; as,

"For all these *actions* you must account."

"All these *actions* you must speedily account *for*, before a high tribunal."

POSITION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

227. RULE XXXIV. The position of conjunctions varies, according as they connect sentences, or merely parts of sentences.

Such conjunctions as, *than, if, though, that, lest, unless, &c.* which connect clauses, but never sentences, take the first place in the clauses to which they refer; as,

"He is older *than* I."

"*Though* he came late, he was in season for the entertainment."

Monosyllabic conjunctions, except *then*, are placed at the beginning of the second sentence; as,

"He was undoubtedly an excellent scholar; *but* his acquaintance with the Oriental languages was not extensive."

"Your success will depend on your own exertions; see, *then*, that you are diligent."

Conjunctions of more than one syllable, with the exception of *whereas*, may be placed either at the beginning of the sentence or not, as the sound may seem to require; as,

"He was learned and honest. *Moreover*, he was well skilled in all lighter accomplishments. It is not surprising, *therefore*, that he should have received the appointment. His success, *however*, is by no means certain."

226. What is the thirty-third rule? 227. What is the thirty-fourth rule?

EXERCISES ON ARRANGEMENT.

Distinguish which of the following Sentences are arranged Conventionally, and which Rhetorically, giving the rules.

With many a snare abounds the path to bliss.

The path to bliss abounds with many a snare.

Rouse all your courage. Was he intelligent?

Had he arrived in season, he would have heard the news.

Comes he with the sword or with the olive branch of peace?

Unnumbered are the blessings she bestows.

Cæsar conquered Britain.

His enemies he won by clemency.

Great conquerors purchase fame at a dear rate.

Great was his sorrow, when he heard the news.

Fallen art thou, O! Son of the Morning.

Bitterly did he mourn the loss of his friend.

Correct the improper collocation of the words in Italics, in the following Conventional Sentences.

Me he despises on account of my poverty.

There *rivers* are in that country.

The nation *their king* deposed without *an error* assigning, as a reason.

If you *me* would oblige, desist from *my friend* calumniating.

From *me* injuring, to *insult* he proceeded.

Cool is the morning, *me and George* a walk would refresh.

I and William are classmates; *Henry and* you occupy the same room.

The town was invested by the army, *which was surrounded by a lofty wall*.

The house was destroyed by fire *which I occupied*.

The country was covered with verdure *completely*.

You are ready to recite *never*.

Your lesson is not *enough* long.

Transpose the Prepositions in the following Sentences, in as many ways as the sense will admit.

I am the man whom you inquired *for*.

Of this conspiracy Cæsar had no knowledge.

From what country he came I never inquired.

To him I of my hard fate complained.

Such treatment I was not prepared *for* and it is treatment which

I have never been accustomed *to*.

Point out, in the following Sentences, the conjunctions which connect sentences, and those which connect only parts of sentences; also the sentences and parts of sentences which they respectively connect.

He thought *that* he should arrive in season; *but* the rail-road cars ran off the track; *and* the whole train was delayed two hours. He arrived, *however*, in the course of the night.

If the cost were duly estimated beforehand, nations would seldom go to war.

To become learned, you must be diligent; use, *therefore*, all the means within your reach for acquiring knowledge; *for unless* you are attentive to this matter now, in your youth, you will remain, to a certain degree, illiterate all your lifetime.

As you sow, *so* you will reap.

I would reply, *if* I thought his arguments sufficiently strong to require refutation; *but* he appears to me to have refuted himself.

Unless he will retire, I cannot remain in the room; *but if* he will go out, I will stay.

Though he was eloquent and learned, *yet* he was not a ready debater.

Plant of celestial seed, if dropp'd below,
Say in what mortal soil thou deign'st to grow:
Fair opening to some court's propitious shrine,
Or deep with diamonds in the flaming mine?
Twined with the wreath Parnassian laurels yield,
Or reap'd in iron harvests of the field?
Where grows! where grows it not? if vain our toil,
We ought to blame the culture, not the soil.

Convert, by transposition, the following Rhetorical Sentences into Conventional Sentences.

Great are their names! Honoured and revered be their memory! Associated with Washington and Franklin, their glory is a precious possession, enriching our annals, and exalting the character of our country. Greater is the bright example they have left us. More precious the lesson, furnished by their lives, for our instruction.

From the charter of our independence, breathes a nobler counsel. To our republic belongs a happier province. Peace we would extend, but by persuasion and example, — the moral force by which alone it can prevail among the nations. Wars we may encounter, but it is in the sacred character of the injured and wronged.

High on the throne of royal state, which far
Outshone the wealth of Ormus or of Inde,
Or where the gorgeous East, with richest hand,
Showers, on her kings barbaric, pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat.

Hence! loathed Melancholy,
Of Cerberus and blackest midnight born,
In Stygian cave forlorn,
'Mongst horrid shapes and shrieks, and sights unholy,
Find out some uncouth cell,
Where brooding darkness spreads his jealous wings,
And the night raven sings;
There, under ebon shades and low-brow'd rocks,
As ragged as thy locks,
In dark Cimmerian desert ever dwell.

To him who in the love of nature holds
Communion with her visible forms, she *speaks*
A various language; for his gayer hours
She has a voice of gladness, and a smile
And eloquence of beauty, and she glides
Into his darker musings, with a mild
And gentle sympathy, that steals away
Their sharpness, ere he is aware.

EXERCISES TO BE WRITTEN BY THE PUPIL.



The Deer.

Write *conventional sentences* illustrative of the twenty-first rule of arrangement.



Napoleon on St. Helena.

Write *rhetorical sentences* illustrative of Rule XXII.

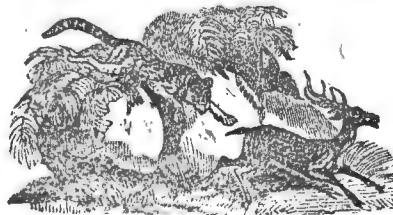
MODEL.

Fallen is the mighty conqueror. Great was his success; but terrible were the calamities which he brought upon the nations: brilliant were his victories; but not less signal and complete were the reverses which terminated his career. Sad and gloomy must have been the thoughts which passed through his mind, as from his rocky prison he surveyed the wide and restless ocean — fit emblem of his boundless ambition, and of the turbulent times which made and marred his splendid fortunes.



Queen Victoria.

Write *rhetorical sentences* illustrative of Rule XXII.



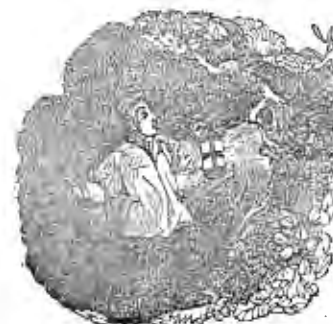
The Pursuit.

Write *conventional sentences* illustrative of Rule XXIII



Herald forbidding a Duel.

Write *rhetorical sentences* illustrative of Rule XXIV.



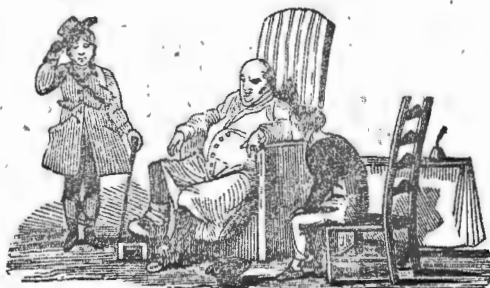
A Fright.

Write *sentences* illustrative of Rule XXV.



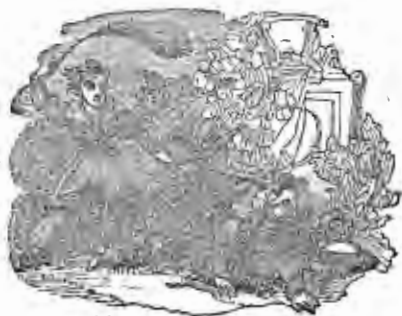
The Highlander.

Write *sentences* illustrative of Rule XXVI.



A Conversation.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXVII.



Sport in the Garden.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXVIII.



The unstrung Bow.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXIX.



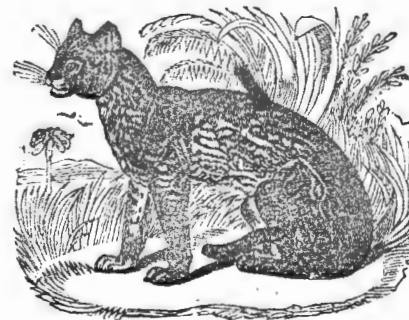
Dinner Time.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXX.



Fishing with Spears.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXXI.



The Ocelot.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXXII.
13 *



The Baboon.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXXIII.



The Lynx.

Write sentences illustrative of Rule XXXIV.

EXERCISES IN SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

"Those men, who destroy a healthful constitution of body by intemperance, and an irregular life, do as manifestly kill themselves, as those who hang, or poison, or drown themselves."

Mode of parsing the above sentence.

THOSE is a demonstrative adjective pronoun, of the plural number, agreeing with the noun MEN. — Rule VII. (*Recite the rule.*)

MEN is a common noun, of the third person plural, and nominative case to the verb DO KILL. — Rule I.

WHO is a relative pronoun, agreeing with its antecedent, MEN. — Rule V. It is of the third person plural, and nominative case to the verb DESTROY. — Remark under Rule I.

DESTROY is a regular active verb, of the indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, agreeing with its nominative WHO. — Rule I.

A, is an indefinite article, prefixed to the noun CONSTITUTION. — Rule VIII.

HEALTHFUL is an adjective qualifying the noun CONSTITUTION. — Rule XXV.

CONSTITUTION is a common noun, of the third person singular, and object of the verb DESTROY. — Rule II.

OF is a preposition.

BODY is a noun of the third person singular, and object of the preposition OF. — Rule XVI.

BY is a preposition.

INTEMPERANCE is a common noun, of the third person, singular number, and object of the preposition BY. — Rule XVI.

AND is a conjunction connecting the nouns INTEMPERANCE and LIFE. — Rule XVII.

AN is an indefinite article, prefixed to the noun LIFE. — Rule VIII.

IRREGULAR is an adjective qualifying the noun LIFE. — Rule XXV.

LIFE is a common noun of the third person, singular number, and object of the preposition BY. — Rule XVI.

DO KILL is a regular active verb, of the indicative mood, present tense, emphatic form, third person plural, agreeing with its nominative MEN. — Rule I.

AS is a conjunction, connecting its own clause of the sentence with the clause which follows. — Rule XXXIV.

MANIFESTLY is an adverb, qualifying the verb DO KILL. — Rule XXXI.

THEMSELVES is a pronoun, compounded of *them* and the reciprocal pronoun *selves*.* It is of the third person, plural number, object of the verb DO KILL. — Rule II.

AS is a conjunction, connecting its own clause of the sentence with the clause which precedes it.

THOSE is a demonstrative adjective pronoun, of the plural number, agreeing with MEN, understood. — Rule VII.

WHO is a relative, agreeing with its antecedent MEN, understood. — Rule V. It is of the third person plural, and nominative case to the verb HANG. — Remark under Rule I.

HANG is an irregular active verb, of the indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, agreeing with WHO. — Rule I.

OR is a conjunction, connecting its own clause with that which precedes it.

* See Section 119, p. 57.

POISON is a regular active verb, of the indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, agreeing with WHO, understood. — Rule I.

OR. (*Parsed as above.*)

DROWN. (*Parsed in the same manner as POISON.*)

THEMSELVES. (*Parsed as above, except that it is the object of DROWN.*)

Parse the following sentences, giving the Rules of Syntax.

- "We find but few historians of all ages, who have been diligent enough in their search for truth; it is their common method to take on trust what they distribute to the public, by which means, a falsehood once received from a famed writer becomes traditional to posterity."
- "The punishment of criminals should be of use: when a man is hanged, he is good for nothing."
- "The morality of an action depends upon the motive from which we act. If I fling half-a-crown to a beggar with intention to break his head, and he picks it up and buys victuals with it, the physical effect is good; but with respect to me, the action is very wrong."
- "How difficult a thing it is to persuade a man to reason against his own interest, though he is convinced that equity is against him!"
- "The aim of education should be to teach us rather how to think than what to think — rather to improve our minds, so as to enable us to think for ourselves, than to load the memory with the thoughts of other men."
- "No entertainment is so cheap as reading, nor any pleasure so lasting."
- "Read not to contradict and confute, but to weigh and consider. Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be digested; that is, some books are to be read only in parts; others to be read, but not curiously; and some few to be read wholly and with diligence and attention. Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man."
- "To do an ill action is base; to do a good one, which involves you in no danger, is nothing more than common; but it is the property of a truly good man, to do great and good things, though he risk every thing by it."

A State.

What constitutes a state?

Not high-raised battlements, or labour'd mound,

Thick wall, or moated gate;

Not cities proud, with spires and turrets crown'd,

Nor bays and broad-arm'd ports,
Where, laughing at the storm, rich navies ride;
Nor starr'd and spangled courts,
Where low-brow'd baseness wafts perfume to pride. —
No! — *men*, high-minded *men*,
With powers as far above dull brutes endued,
In forest, brake, or den,
As beasts excel cold rocks and brambles rude;
Men, who their *duties* know,
But know their *rights*; and, knowing, dare maintain,
Prevent the long-aimed blow,
And crush the tyrant, while they rend the chain, —
These constitute a state;
And sovereign *law*, that *state's* collected will,
High over thrones, and globes elate,
Sits empress, crowning good, repressing ill.
Smit by her sacred frown,
The fiend *discretion*, like a vapour sinks;
And e'en the all-dazzling *crown*
Hides his faint rays, and at her bidding shrinks.
Such was this heaven-lov'd isle,
Than *Lesbos* fairer, and the *Cretan* shore! —
No more shall *Freedom* smile?
Shall *Britons* languish, and be *men* no more?
Since all must life resign,
Those sweet rewards which animate the brave,
'Tis folly to decline,
And steal inglorious to the silent grave.

Sir William Jones.

Love of Fame.

The love of praise, howe'er concealed by art,
Reigns more or less, and glows in every heart:
The proud to gain it toils on toils endure,
The modest shun it, but to make it sure;
O'er globes and sceptres, now on thrones it swells,
Now trims the midnight lamp in college cells.
'Tis Tory, Whig; it plots, prays, preaches, pleads,
Harangues in senates, speaks in masquerades.
It aids the dancer's heel, the writer's head,
And heaps the plain with mountains of the dead;
Nor ends with life; but nods in sable plumes,
Adorns our hearse, and flatters on our tombs.

Young.

PUNCTUATION.

1. In speaking or reading a sentence, various pauses are made, for the purpose of making the construction and meaning more distinct to the hearer.

2. Punctuation is the marking of these pauses, by points, indicative of their length.

3. The principal points are the Comma (,), the Semicolon (;), the Colon (:), and the Period (.).

4. The Comma represents the shortest pause, and is often used to mark the construction where very little interruption of voice is allowable.

5. The Semicolon marks a longer pause than a comma, and separates clauses less closely connected.

6. The Colon marks a longer pause than the semicolon, and indicates a still looser connexion between the clauses which it separates.

7. The Period, or full point, is used at the end of a sentence, to indicate that it is completed.

COMMA.

8. RULE I. When a simple sentence is long, the subject and predicate each consisting of a number of words, a comma is placed between them; as,

"To be constantly apprehensive of unknown dangers, is a mark of a weak mind."

9. RULE II. When two or more words, whether nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, or adverbs, are connected without the connecting word being expressed, the comma supplies the place of that word; as,

"Honour, duty, affection and interest required the act."

"He was honourable, dutiful, affectionate and wise."

1. Why are pauses used? 2. What is punctuation? 3. What are the principal points used in writing? 4. Describe the Comma. — 5. The Semicolon. — 6. The Colon. — 7. The Period. 8. What is the first rule for the use of the comma? — Give examples. 9. What is the second rule for the use of the comma? — Give examples. 10.

"We should honour, reverence, love and defend our parents."

"Give it to him, her or me."

"You should conduct yourself honourably, dutifully, affectionately and discreetly in this matter."

10. RULE III. Absolute, relative, and, in general, all parenthetical clauses, are separated from the other parts of a sentence by commas; as,

"The clock having struck ten, the meeting was adjourned."

"The man, whom you met at the party, is a Frenchman."

"We were always successful, because we were careful."

"The war, even at the close, was not universally popular."

"He returns, I think, under very favourable auspices."

11. RULE IV. The modifying words and phrases, *namely, however, hence, besides, finally, in short, at least*, and the like, are usually separated by commas; as,

"The Romans understood liberty as well, at least, as we."

12. RULE V. Words denoting the person or object addressed are separated by commas; as,

"I write, my friend, in great distress of mind."

"Thy daughters, Columbia, are fair."

13. RULE VI. A word or phrase emphatically repeated is separated by commas; as,

"The people, the people, if we are true to them, will carry us, and will carry themselves, gloriously, through this struggle."

14. RULE VII. The words of another writer cited, but not formally introduced as a quotation, are separated by commas; as,

"Lord Bacon tells us that, *He that hath wife and children, hath given hostages to fortune.*"

15. RULE VIII. Words and clauses, though closely connected in construction, are often separated by a comma, when contrast or opposition is expressed; as,

"He came full of hope, and returned disappointed."

What is the third rule for the use of the comma? — Give examples. 11. What is the fourth rule? — Give examples. 12. What is the fifth rule? — Give examples. 13. What is the sixth rule? — Give examples. 14. What is the seventh rule? — Give examples. 15. What is

16. RULE IX. When the absence of a word is indicated in reading or speaking by a pause, its place may be supplied by a comma; as,

"Want creates discontent; discontent, sedition; sedition, anarchy; and anarchy, despotism."

SEMICOLON.

17. RULE I. When a sentence consists of two parts, the one containing a complete proposition, and the other added as an inference, or to give some reason or explanation, the two parts are separated by a semicolon; as,

"I cannot assent to the doctrine; for it is equally repugnant to religion and common sense."

18. RULE II. When a sentence consists of several members, each constituting a distinct proposition, and having a dependence upon each other or upon some common clause, they are separated by semicolons; as,

"He came immediately to the camp; inquired into the cause of the meeting; brought the ringleaders to trial; and did not abandon the affair, till they were all convicted and shot."

COLON.

19. RULE I. When a sentence consists of two parts, the one so complete in itself as to admit a full point, and the other containing an additional remark, depending upon the former in sense, though not in syntax, the connection of the remark with the preceding proposition is indicated by a colon; as,

"Painting is a noble art: it should be encouraged as a means of national glory."

20. RULE II. When a sentence, which consists of an enumeration of particulars, each separated from the other by a

the eighth rule? — Give examples. 16. What is the ninth rule for the use of the comma? — Give examples. 17. What is the first rule for the use of the Semicolon? — Give an example. 18. The second rule? — Give an example. 19. What is the first rule for the use of the Colon? — Give an example. 20. The second rule? — Give an exam-

semicolon, has its sense suspended till the last, that clause is disjoined from the preceding by a colon; as,

"If he has not been unfaithful to his king; if he has not proved a traitor to his country; if he has never given cause for such charges as have been preferred against him: why then is he afraid to confront his accusers?"

The colon is rarely used in composition. It may, for the most part, be dispensed with, without any great inconvenience.

PERIOD.

21. Besides being used to mark the completion of a sentence, the period is placed after initials, when used alone, as, D. D. for Doctor of Divinity; and after abbreviations, as, Lat., for Latin.

22. The other marks most commonly used are the Dash (—), the point of Interrogation (?), the point of Exclamation (!), and the Parenthesis ().

23. The Dash marks a break in the sentence, or an abrupt turn; as,

"Great distresses are silent — penury depresses the spirits as it emaciates the body."

24. The point of Interrogation is put after a sentence which asks a question; as,

"Is it fancy, or is it fact?"

25. The point of Exclamation is used after sudden expressions of emotion; as,

"Behold! I bring you glad tidings!"

26. The Parenthesis is sometimes used to enclose a remark or clause not essential to the sentence in construction, but useful in explaining it, or introducing an important idea; as,

"Let us, then (for we can no longer conceal the necessity of such a proceeding), enter at once upon a full investigation."

ple. 21. What are the uses of the period? 22. What are the other points and stops? — Explain their uses

EXERCISES ON PUNCTUATION.

Correct the Errors, and supply the Defects, in the following Sentences:

COMMA.

Politics, is the application of morals to social institutions.

The peculiar character of the doctrine of Confucius is that all, the duties of man are presented as various forms of domestic duties.

Plato; Epicurus; and Aristotle; were great, Grecian philosophers.

Irenæus Tertullian Origen and Clement; of Alexandria were fathers of the Church.

Time, and money, industry, and talent: were thrown away, in this useless pursuit.

He rose; like the sun; when he is shrouded in vapours, but he soon burst forth in meridian splendour.

SEMICOLON.

He often comes; to see me, but he seldom tarries long.

Parrots like all other hooked-clawed birds walk awkwardly, they make use of their bill as a third foot climbing and descending; with a ridiculous caution.

Owls move in a buoyant manner; as if lighter than the air, they seem to want ballast.

Most small birds hop, but wagtails and larks walk; moving their legs alternately.

Skylarks rise and fall; perpendicularly; as they sing, wood-larks hang poised in the air, and tit-larks rise and fall; in large curves; singing in their descent.

COLON.

He who possesses a treasure does not care to show it to all the world, he preserves it to use in time of need, you would do the same if you were a true sage.

Correct this fault, purge yourself from all desire of pleasure, this will make you much more useful than all you are trying to learn about the ancients.

Point the following Sentences:

We scarce believe a thing when we are told it which we actually see before our eyes every day without being the least surprised.

I suppose that there are in Great Britain upwards of a hundred thou-

sand people employed in lead tin iron copper and coal mines these unhappy wretches scarce ever see the light of the sun they are buried in the bowels of the earth there they work at a severe and dismal task without the least prospect of being delivered from it they subsist on the coarsest and worst sort of fare they have their health miserably impaired and their lives cut short by being perpetually confined in the close vapour of these malignant minerals. A hundred thousand more at least are tortured without remission by the suffocating smoke intense fires and constant drudgery necessary in refining and managing the products of these mines.

If any man informed us that two hundred thousand innocent persons were confined to so intolerable a slavery how should we pity the unhappy sufferers and how great would be our just indignation against those that inflicted so cruel and ignominious a punishment.

This is an instance I could not wish a stronger of the numberless things which we pass by in their common dress yet which shock us when they are nakedly represented.

But this number considerable as it is and the slavery with all its baseness and horror which we have at home is nothing to what the rest of the world affords of the same nature.

Nature has placed mankind under the governance of two sovereign masters Pain and Pleasure It is for them alone to point out what we ought to do as well as to determine what we shall do On the one hand the standard of right and wrong on the other the chain of causes and effects are fastened to their throne They govern us in all we do in all we say in all we think every effort we can make to throw off our subjection will serve but to demonstrate and to confirm it In words a man may pretend to abjure their empire but in reality he will remain subject to it all the while The principle of utility recognises this subjection and assumes it for the foundation of that system the object of which is to rear the fabric of felicity by the hands of reason and of law Systems which attempt to question it deal in sounds instead of sense in caprice instead of reason in darkness instead of light The happiness of the individuals of whom a community is composed that is their pleasures and their security is the end which the legislator ought to have in view the sole standard in conformity to which each individual ought as far as depends upon the legislator to be made to fashion his behaviour But whether it be this or any thing else that is to be done there is nothing by which a man can ultimately be made to do it but either pain or pleasure Plautus turned a mill Terence was a slave Boethius died in a jail Paul Borghese had fifteen different trades and starved with them all.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

1. Prosody* is that part of grammar which treats of the structure of Poetical Composition.

2. Poetry differs in structure from prose chiefly in requiring a more measured arrangement of words, and in admitting greater license in the application of them.

3. The measured arrangement which distinguishes poetry from prose is called *Versification*.

4. The application of words, peculiar to poetry, is called *Poetical License*.

VERSIFICATION.

5. The harmony of Verse depends upon the regular recurrence, at fixed intervals, of syllables of a certain quantity.

6. Syllables are either *long or short, accented or unaccented*.

7. A syllable is *long or short* according to the time occupied in pronouncing it; as, tūbe, tūb.

8. A syllable is *accented or unaccented* according as stress of the voice is placed upon it in pronunciation; as, dete'r, i'njury.

9. The harmony of English verse depends chiefly upon the return at regular intervals of *accented*, and not of *long* syllables.

"Of ma'n's first di'sobe'dience a'nd the fru'it
Of tha't forbi'dden tre'e, whose mo'r'tal tas'te
Brought de'ath into' the wo'rld and a'll our wo'."

10. It is only necessary to repeat any verse in English to per-

* *Prosody* strictly denotes only that musical tone or melody which accompanies speech. But the usage of modern grammarians justifies an extremely general application of the term.

1. What is Prosody? 2. How does poetry differ from prose? 3. What is Versification? 4. What is poetical license? 5. Upon what does the harmony of verse depend? 6. What is said of syllables? 7. Are syllables always long or short? 8. Are they always accented? 9. Upon what does the harmony of English verse depend? — 10. How

ceive, that without the alternate percussion of accented and unaccented syllables it would not be harmonious. Thus:—

11. Some instances occur of harmony produced by the quantity alone, apart from accent; as,

"Fōūntains, and ye that warble as y^e flōw."
"For Eloqūence thē sōul; Sōng chārms thē sēse."

12. But such instances are few: the accent, in the vast majority of cases, determines the pronunciation, and consequently, the harmony of the line, without regard to the natural length of the syllables. Thus:—

"Hūrl'd he'adlōng flā'mīng from th' ethe'reāl sky'."

13. A Verse is a measured line consisting of a certain number of regular returns of accented and unaccented syllables.

14. The number of accents in a verse determines the number of feet.

15. A foot consists generally of *two*, and sometimes of *three* syllables, one of which is always accented.

16. It is called *foot*, because it is by the aid of the accent which marks its principal syllable that we step along through the verse in a measured pace.

17. The principal feet are the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Anapæst*.

18. An *Iambus* is a dissyllabic foot, having the accented syllable last; as, *ado're*.

19. A *Trochee* is a dissyllabic foot, having the accented syllable first; as, *no'ble*.

20. An *Anapæst* consists of three syllables, the two first unaccented, and the last accented; as, *intercede*.

21. *Rhyme* is the name by which we distinguish verses that are closed by final syllables of a similar sound; as,

"Hope, for a season, bade the world farewell,
And Freedom shriek'd—as Kosciusko fell!"

is its harmony perceived? — Give an example. 11. Is harmony sometimes produced by quantity alone? — Give an example. 12. What does the accent determine? 13. What is a verse? 14. What does the number of accents determine? 15. What is a foot? 16. Why is it called foot? 17. What are the principal feet? 18. What is an Iambus? — 19. A Trochee? — 20. An Anapæst? 21. What is rhyme? — Give examples.

"A king sat on the rocky brow
Which looks o'er sea-born Salamis;
And ships by thousands lay below,
And men in nations:—all were his!
He counted them at break of day—
And when the sun set—where were they?"

22. Verses which have not this similarity of sound in their final syllables are called *Blank Verse*; as,

"How still the morning of the hallow'd day!
Mute is the voice of rural labour, hush'd
The ploughboy's whistle, and the milkmaid's song;
The scythe lies glittering in the dewy wreath
Of tedded grass, mingled with fading flowers
That yestermorn bloom'd waving in the breeze."

23. Verses are distinguished by various names, according to the feet that prevail in them; as, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapaestic*.

24. The two most common kinds of verse are the *Iambic* and *Trochaic*.

25. *Iambic* verse has the weak percussive first, and the loud last.

26. *Trochaic* verse has the loud first, and the weak last.

IAMBIC VERSE.

27. (1.) The most common and also the most dignified verse in English poetry consists of five *Iambic* feet, or ten syllables; as,

"Depa'rt- | ed spi'r- | its o'f | the mig'h- | ty de'ad!
Ye who' | at Ma'r- | atho'n | and Leu'c- | tra ble'd!"

"Perha'ps | in thi's | neglec't- | ed spo't | is la'id |
Some heart once pregnant with celestial fire;
Hands, that the rod of empire might have sway'd,
Or waked to ecstasy the living lyre."

"How sw'et | the moo'n- | light slee'ps | upon' | this ba'nk! |
Here will we sit, and let the sounds of music
Creep in our ears; soft stillness and the night
Become the touches of sweet harmony!"

22. What is *Blank Verse*? — Give an example. 23. How are verses distinguished? 24. Name the most common kinds. 25. Describe the *Iambic* verse. — 26. The *Trochaic*. 27. Give examples of *Iambic* verse

28. This measure, commonly called the *Heroic*, has a grave and majestic march, well suited to heroic argument, especially if it be not fettered with rhyme.

29. It admits of some freedom for the purpose of giving it variety, especially in the beginning and end of the line. The *first* foot is often a *Trochee* instead of an *Iambus*; and the *last* has often a short unaccented syllable appended to the *Iambus*. Thus:—

"Da'ughter | of God and man, accomplished Eve." |

"Ple'asures | the sex, as children birds pursue."

"Tis Heaven itself that points out an here'af- | t'r." |

30. Sometimes even greater irregularities are admissible; as,

"Burnt after him to the bottomless pit."

31. A verse of six feet or twelve syllables, called an *Alexandrine* line, is occasionally introduced into heroic verse, especially at the close of a passage; as,

"Time writes no wrinkle on thine azure brow—

Such as | Crea- | tion's dawn | beheld, | thou roll- | est now." |

32. (2.) A shorter *Iambic* verse is made from the former, by cutting off one *Iambus*, or two syllables; as,

"Thou, Ste'll- | a, wa'st | no lon'g- | er yo'ung, |
When fir'st | for the'e | my ly're | I strung." |

"Thou art, | O Go'd, | the life | and li'ght |
Of a'll | this wo'nd- | rous wo'ld | we se'e: |
Its glow by day, its smile by night,
Are but reflections caught from thee!"

33. This measure is sometimes varied, to adapt it to light subjects, by the addition of two syllables, forming a double rhyme; as,

"His brow'n- | y ba'ck | and sid'es | Hercu'l- | can
Support the star and string *cerulean*."

of five feet. — 28. What is it commonly called? — 29. How is it varied? — 30. What are often admissible? 31. What is a verse of six feet called. — Give an example. 32. What is said of a shorter verse? — Give examples. 33. How is a double rhyme formed? — Give examples.

34. (3.) Iambic verse is sometimes further shortened into six syllables, by cutting off another foot; as,

"Though tho'u | the wa't- | ers wa'rp |
Thy sti'ng | is no't | so sha'rp." |

"In pla'c- | es fa'r | or ne'ar, |
Or fa'm- | ous o'r | obscu're, |
Where wholesome is the air,
Or where the most impure."

35. The four-lined stanza of Psalmody generally consists of alternate Iambic verses of four and three feet; as,

"Lord, tho'u | did'st love | Jeru's- | ale'm, |
Once she' | was a'll | thine ow'n : |
Her love thy fairest heritage,
Her power thy glory's throne."

36. A residuary syllable or half foot is often added to an Iambic line, for the sake of variety; as,

"And coun't- | less kin'gs | have i'n- | to du'st | been hu'mb- | led,
While no't | a fr'ag- | ment o'f | thy fle'sh | has cr'umb- | led!"

"Waft, wa'ft | ye wind's | his sto'- | ry,
And on' | ye wa' | ters ro'll, |
Till, li'ke | a se'a | of glo'- | ry,
It sprea'ds | from po'le | to po'le!" |

TROCHAIC VERSE.

37. Trochaic verse is also of various lengths.

1. It sometimes contains *six* feet or twelve syllables; as,

"O'n a | m'ountain | stretch'ed | be | ne'ath a | h'oary | w'illow, |
Lay a shepherd swain and view'd the rolling billow."

2. It sometimes contains *five* feet or ten syllables; as,

"A'll that | wa'lk on | fo'ot or | ri'de in | ch'ariots; |
All that dwell in palaces or garrets."

3. It sometimes contains *four* feet or eight syllables; as,

"On' they | ma'rch though | to' self- | sl'ughter, |
Regular as rolling water."

34. How is Iambic verse still further shortened? — Give examples.

37. Give examples of Trochaic verse of six feet. — Of five feet. — Of four

4. It sometimes contains *three* feet or six syllables; as,

"Or' where | He'brus | w'anders, |
Rolling in meanders."

5. The Trochaic line most generally employed contains *three* feet, and an additional syllable; as,

"Ro'me be | cr'ush'd to | o'ne wide | tomb,
B'ut be | st'ill the | Ro'man's | Rome."

"Li'ke le- | vi'a- | tha'ns a- | float
La'y their | b'ulwarks | o'n the | brine;
While the sign of battle flew
On the lofty British line."

ANAPÆSTIC VERSE.

38. In Anapæstic verse, the interval between the accented syllables is doubled, and the percussion falls on every third syllable.

39. Anapæstic verse is, in common with Iambic and Trochaic, of various lengths.

1. It sometimes consists of *four* feet or twelve syllables; as,

"From the kna'ves- | and the fo'ols, | and the fo'ps | of the ti'me; |
From the drudges in prose, and the triflers in rhyme."

"And the w'id- | ows of A'- | shur are lou'd | in their wa'il, |
And the idols are broke in the temple of Baal."

2. It sometimes consists of *three* feet or nine syllables; as,

"Who are the'y | that now bi'd | us be slave's? |
They are fo'es | to the go'od | and the fre'e."

3. It sometimes consists of *two* feet or six syllables; as,

"But his cou'r- | age 'gan fai'l, |
For no a'rts | could avai'l."

40. Anapæstic verse admits of variety, as well as the Iambic and Trochaic, by taking an additional syllable at the end, and sometimes a dissyllabic foot at the beginning of the line; as,

"On the war'm | cheek of you'th | smiles and r'o- | ses are ble'nd- |
ing." |

feet. — Of three feet. — Of three feet and one syllable. — 38. Describe Anapæstic verse. — Give examples of the different varieties of feet.

"But his cou'r- | age 'gan fa'il | *him*, |
For no a'rts | could ava'il | *him*.""]

"If e'er | in thy sigh't | I found fa'v- | our, Ap'ol- | *lo*, |
Defe'nd | me from al'l | the dis'as- | ters that fo'l- | *low*."

41. Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic feet all admit of occasional intermixture; and many beautiful passages in our poets cannot be scanned without the use of all of them.

The following are examples:—

"Rests secu're | the ri'gh- | teous ma'n: |
At h'is | Redee'm- | er's be'ck, |
Sure t' em'er'ge | and ri'se | agai'n, |
And mo'unt | abo've | the wre'ck."

"And the're | lay the ri'd | er distor't | ed and pal'e, |
With the de'w | on his bro'w | and the ru'st | on his ma'il." |

"Awa'ke | 'tis the te'r | ror of war', |
The cr'es | cent is tos's'd | on the wi'nd." |

POETICAL LICENSE.

42. The language of poetry admits of several peculiarities in its grammatical structure, in order to fit it the better for being formed into regular numbers.

1. Poetry admits of the use of words and phrases which in prose would be accounted obsolete.

Such phrases give to poetical composition that rust of antiquity, which is a great beauty, if not carried so far as to make the diction uncouth and obscure.

2. Poetry admits of a bolder transposition of words than prose: the *rhetorical* arrangement being as much the usual order in the former as the *conventional* is in the latter.

3. Some words are lengthened by a syllable, and others abbreviated, to adapt them to the purposes of measured composition. Thus, for *part*, the poets often use *dispart*; for *chain*, *enchain*; for *morning*, *morn*; for *valley*, *vale*.

4. Poetry admits of a liberal use of nouns for adjectives; as,

"Amid the *greenwood* shade this boy was bred."

42. What is Poetical License? Give instances with respect to obsolete words. — What is said as regards transposition? — What is said about lengthening and shortening words? — Using nouns for adjectives? —

5. In the use of conjunctions in pairs, *nor* is often substituted for *neither*, and *or* for *either*; as,

"To them *nor* stores nor granaries belong,
Nought but the woodland and the pleasing song."

"Remote, unfriended, melancholy, slow,
Or by the lazy Scheldt or wandering Po."

6. Poetry admits of great variety of elliptical expressions, and even allows the omission, in certain cases, of important parts of speech. Thus, two words are contracted into one; as, '*Twas*, for *It was*; '*Tis*, for *It is*; '*Twill*, for *It will*; *We'll*, for *We will*.

43. Vowels and sometimes consonants are elided to run two syllables into one: as,

"T' alarm *th'* eternal midnight of the grave."

"Whate'er she hides beneath her verdant floor."

"The hunter-steed exulting *o'er* the dale."

"Till, at advantage *ta'en*, his brand
Forced Rod'rick's weapon from his hand."

44. Nouns are often omitted in interrogative sentences; as, "*Lives there* who loves his pain?" that is, "*Lives there a man*."

45. Verbs are often omitted, especially such as express address or answer; as,

"To whom the monarch;" that is, "To whom the monarch *said* or *replied*."

46. Prepositions are often omitted; as,

"He mourn'd no recreant friend, no mistress coy;" that is, "He mourned for no recreant friend," &c.

EXERCISES ON PROSODY.

Scan the following verses:—

The fiery courser, when he hears from far
The sprightly trumpets and the shouts of war,
Pricks up his ears, and, trembling with delight,
Shifts place, and paws, and hopes the promised fight.

What is said respecting conjunctions? — Respecting Ellipses. 43. What is said of vowels and consonants? — 44. Of nouns? — 45. Of verbs? — 46. Of prepositions?

Should fate command me to the farthest verge
Of the green earth, to distant barbarous climes,
Rivers unknown to song; where first the sun
Gilds Indian mountains, or his setting beam
Flames on the Atlantic isles; — 'tis nought to me,
Since God is ever present — ever felt,
In the void waste as in the city full;
And, where He vital breathes, there must be joy.

No longer Autumn's glowing red
Upon our forest hills is shed;
No more beneath the evening beam
Fair Tweed reflects their purple gleam;
Away hath pass'd the heather-bell
That bloom'd so rich on Needpath-fell;
Sallow his brow, and russet bare
Are now the sister heights of Yare.

Our native land — our native vale —
A long — a last adieu!
Farewell to bonny Teviotdale,
And Cheviot's mountains blue.
The battle-mound — the Border tower,
That Scotia's annals tell —
The martyr's grave — the lover's bower,
To each — to all — farewell!

Last came Joy's ecstatic trial:
He with ivy crown advancing,
First to the lively pipe his hand address'd;
But soon he saw the brisk awakening viol,
Whose sweet entrancing voice he loved the best.
They would have thought, who heard the strain,
They saw in Tempe's vale her native maids,
Amidst the festal sounding shades,
To some unwearied minstrel dancing;
While as his flying fingers kiss'd the strings,
Love framed with Mirth a gay fantastic round;
Loose were her tresses seen, her zone unbound,
And he, amidst his frolic play,
As if he would the charming air repay,
Shook thousand odours from his dewy wings.

APPENDIX.

DERIVATION.

Derivation is that part of Etymology which treats of the *Origin* and *Primary Signification* of words.

The words of a cultivated language, however numerous and apparently unconnected, are found on examination to be reducible to groups or families, and to be related to each other by identity of origin and similarity of signification.

Thus, the words, *justly, justice, justify, justification, justiciary, adjust, re-adjust, unjust, injustice, &c.* are all kindred words, connected with their common parent, *just*. In like manner, *terrace, terraqueous, terrene, terrestrial, terrier, territory, inter, interment, disinter, Mediterranean, subterranean, &c.* are all connected with their parent, *terra*, the earth.

Words are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

A *Primitive* word is not derived from any simpler word in the language; as, *man, just*.

A *Derivative* word is formed from some word of greater simplicity; as, *manhood, unjust*.

The primitive words of a language are always few compared with the whole amount of its vocabulary.

The primitives of the Greek, — one of the most various and copious of languages, — do not, according to Dr. Adam Smith, exceed three hundred: and Lord Monboddo even goes so far as to maintain that its whole vocabulary is derived from five duads, or combinations of two letters.

A language is considered perfect in respect of etymological structure when its primitives are very few in comparison of its derivatives, and when it has not only all the latter but also all the former within itself, and of its own growth.

Derivation seems to be an artifice of language to keep the number of words within proper bounds.

When the enlargement of his knowledge requires the use of a new word, it is natural for man, instead of inventing at once a sound altogether arbitrary, to graft a derivative, significant of the thing he

wishes to express, on some well-known stock : and the principle on which he proceeds in selecting the stock and forming the derivative, is, to express things which are connected together by words which have also a connexion with one another.

The effect of this modification of old words in preventing the multiplication of new ones is well illustrated by the derivatives which are employed to express number. We give names to particular numbers to the extent of *ten*, and then we turn back and reckon *ten and one*, *ten and two*, *ten and three*, &c. giving names to the new numbers compounded of the names of the old. Thus,* *thirteen* (three-ten), *fourteen* (four-ten), *fifteen* (five-ten), &c. In this way we go on till we come to twice ten, which is expressed by a word (twenty) analagous to the names of two and ten. In like manner we count *three tens* (thirty), *four tens* (forty), &c., till we come to *ten tens*, which is expressed by a new word (hundred). Then the reckoning proceeds till it come to *ten hundred*, which is expressed by another new word (thousand): and so on, till we come to *ten hundred thousand*, which requires the invention of another new word (million). Thus, by the help of derivation and composition, we are enabled to express by a few new words all possible numbers, — which, without such help, would alone have required a language to express them.

ORIGIN OF WORDS.

I. ORIGIN OF ENGLISH ROOTS.

The English language derives its roots from various languages.

The basis of the language is the Saxon, which was spoken in England during the time of the Anglo-Saxons. But the original stock, besides being greatly modified by use, has received large and constant additions from other languages. The Danish and Norman invasions successively introduced a few Danish and Norman-French words. Subsequently, a great number of Latin and Greek words obtained currency, as also some French, Italian, and Spanish words. And, more recently, many scientific terms, especially the names of natural productions, have been adopted from the German; as well as many names of new commodities of commerce borrowed from the countries whence they have been imported. The great majority of our words, however, are still either of Saxon or of Latin origin.

* *Eleven* and *twelve* are not cited as examples, because the word *ten* does not enter into their composition. They probably owe their origin to combinations of the words *leave-one* (*leave one*) and *two-leave*, — meaning, that in counting a collection of eleven or twelve individuals, when the *radix* ten is counted off, we *leave one* in the one case, and *leave two* in the other. — See Lardner's *Cyclopædia*, *Arithmetic*, p. 11.

The roots of the English language may be divided into *Separable* and *Inseparable*.

Separable roots are such as have been adopted into the language in the form of *entire words*; as, *lucre*, from the Latin *lucrum*.

Inseparable roots are such as have been admitted only as the *radical parts* of derivative or compound words; as, *omni* in *omnipotent*, from the Latin *omnis*.

Such roots as have been naturalized in the form of entire or separate words have been adopted into the language without almost any change except a slight alteration or transposition of their final letters. But such as have been naturalized for the purpose of appearing only in composition as inseparable roots, have also lost their distinctive character as particular parts of speech.

SEPARABLE ROOTS.

The roots of the principal parts of speech are more easily traceable to their origin, and have undergone more regular changes in passing into the language, than those of indeclinable words.

The *Saxon* words, which form the basis of the language, have undergone various changes in their grammatical structure as well as in their final letters.

All the Saxon cases except the possessive — where (*'s*) has taken the place of *as* — have disappeared; the Saxon plural termination *en* has been supplanted by *s*, except in a few words; as, *oxen*, *hosen*, &c.; the termination of the Saxon infinitive *an* has been dispensed with; as, *forgive* for *forgivan*; and the variations of the verb in the several persons have also been materially changed.

The *Latin* words which have been adopted have, for the most part, suffered a change of termination.

Thus, the termination *alis* is changed into *al*; as, from *orientalis*, *oriental*.

Atus is changed into *ate*; as, from *status*, *state*.

Bilis is changed into *ble*; as, from *laudabilis*, *laudable*.

Crum is changed into *cre*; as, from *lucrum*, *lucre*.

Ctus and *ctum* are changed into *ct*; as, from *actus*, *act*; from *effectus*, *effect*; from *edictum*, *edict*.

Culus and *culum* are changed into *cle*; as, from *circulus*, *circle*; from *curriculum*, *curricule*.

Enus is changed into *ene*; as, from *terrenus*, *terrenc*.

Erus is changed into *ere*; as, from *sincerus*, *sincere*.
Gnus and *gnum* are changed into *gn*; as, from *benignus*, *benign*; from *signum*, *sign*.
Idus is changed into *id*; as, from *candidus*, *candid*.
Ilis is changed into *ile*; as, from *docilis*, *docile*.
Inus is changed into *ine*; as, from *divinus*, *divine*.
Io is changed into *ion*; as, from *religio*, *religion*.
Ivus is changed into *ive*; as, from *activus*, *active*.
Ns is changed into *nt*; as, from *innocens*, *innocent*.
Ntia is changed into *nce*; as, from *scientia*, *science*.
O, when preceded by a single consonant, is changed into *e*; as, from *scribo*, *scribe*; from *confido*, *confide*; from *reviso*, *revise*; from *altitudo*, *altitude*.
O, when preceded by a double consonant, is, together with the last consonant, omitted: as, from *committo*, *commit*; from *compello*, *compel*.
Osus is changed into *ose* or *ous*; as, from *jocosus*, *jocose*; from *calamitosus*, *calamitous*.
Sus is changed into *se*; as, from *sensus*, *sense*.
Ssus is changed into *ss*; as, from *recessus*, *recess*; from *remissus*, *remiss*.
Tas is changed into *ty*; as, from *charitas*, *charity*.
Ugium is changed into *uge*; as, from *refugium*, *refuge*.
Unus is changed into *une*; as, from *jejunus*, *jeune*.
Urus is changed into *ure*; as, from *securus*, *secure*.
Usus is changed into *use*; as, from *usus*, *use*.
Utus and *utum* are changed into *ute*; as, from *arbutus*, *arbut*; from *statutum*, *statute*.
Xus is changed into *x*; as, from *prolixus*, *prolix*.

The Latin words which have suffered more than a change of termination in passing into English are chiefly such as have been received through the medium of the French; as,

LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
<i>Als</i> , a wing	<i>Aile</i>	<i>Aisle</i>
<i>Auctor</i>	<i>Auteur</i>	<i>Author</i>
<i>Bonitas</i> , goodness	<i>Bonté</i>	<i>Bounty</i>
<i>Bos</i> , an ox	<i>Bœuf</i>	<i>Beef</i>
<i>Brevis</i> , short	<i>Brief</i>	<i>Brief</i>
<i>Califacere</i> , to warm	<i>Echauffer</i>	<i>Chafe</i>
<i>Canalis</i> , a pipe	<i>Chenal</i>	<i>Channel</i>
<i>Canna</i> , a reed	<i>Canne</i>	<i>Cane</i>
<i>Caput</i> , the head	<i>Chef</i> *	<i>Chief</i>
<i>Carmen</i> , a song or incantation	<i>Charme</i>	<i>Charm</i>
<i>Catena</i>	<i>Chaîne</i>	<i>Chain</i>

* There can be no doubt that *chef* is from *caput*; because it can be traced in old writers through the successive stages of its progress,—*chept*, *chep*, *chef*.

LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
<i>Coluber</i> , a snake*	<i>Coulevrine</i>	<i>Culverin</i>
<i>Computare</i> , to reckon	<i>Compter</i>	<i>Count</i>
<i>Cooperire</i>	<i>Couvrir</i>	<i>Cover</i>
<i>Cutellus</i>	<i>Coutelas</i>	<i>Cutlass</i>
<i>Diabolus</i>	<i>Diable</i>	<i>Devil</i>
<i>Dignari</i> , to think worthy	<i>Deigner</i>	<i>Deign</i>
<i>Ebur</i>	<i>Ivoire</i>	<i>Ivory</i>
<i>Extraneus</i> , outward	<i>Etranger</i>	<i>Stranger</i>
<i>Feretrum</i>	<i>Bière</i>	<i>Bier</i>
<i>Ferox</i>	<i>Féroce</i>	<i>Fierce</i>
<i>Fidelitas</i> , fidelity	<i>Feodalité</i>	<i>Fealty</i>
<i>Gigas</i>	<i>Géant</i>	<i>Giant</i>
<i>Gubernare</i>	<i>Gouverner</i>	<i>Govern</i>
<i>Gula</i> , the throat	<i>Goulet</i>	<i>Gullet</i>
<i>Incantare</i>	<i>Enchanter</i>	<i>Enchant</i>
<i>Inimicitia</i>	<i>Inimitié</i>	<i>Enmity</i>
<i>Lectarium</i> , a bed	<i>Litière</i>	<i>Litter</i>
<i>Levare</i> , to lift	<i>Lever</i>	<i>Lift</i>
<i>Lex</i>	<i>Loi</i>	<i>Law</i>
<i>Macer</i> , lean	<i>Maigre</i>	<i>Meagre</i>
<i>Magister</i>	<i>Maître, Maître</i>	<i>Master</i>
<i>Magnus</i> , great	<i>Magne</i>	<i>Main</i>
<i>Medietas</i> , the middle	<i>Moitié</i>	<i>Moiety</i>
<i>Mirabile</i>	<i>Merveille</i>	<i>Marvel</i>
<i>Nomen</i> , a name	<i>Nom</i>	<i>Noun</i>
<i>Numerus</i> , a number	<i>Nombre</i>	<i>Number</i>
<i>Nutrix</i>	<i>Nourrice</i>	<i>Nurse</i>
<i>Oleum</i>	<i>Huile</i>	<i>Oil</i>
<i>Paganus</i>	<i>Paysan</i>	<i>Peasant</i>
<i>Panarium</i> , a basket	<i>Panier</i>	<i>Pannier</i>
<i>Passus</i> , a step	<i>Pas</i>	<i>Pace</i>
<i>Pauper</i>	<i>Pauvre</i>	<i>Poor</i>
<i>Peregrinus</i>	<i>Pèlerin</i>	<i>Pilgrim</i>
<i>Populus</i> , the people	<i>Peuple</i>	<i>People</i>
<i>Præpositus</i> , placed over	<i>Prévost, now Prévôt</i>	<i>Provost</i>
<i>Presbyter</i>	<i>Prebtre or Pres-tre, now Prêtre</i>	<i>Priest</i>
<i>Probare</i> , to prove	<i>Prouver</i>	<i>Prove</i>
<i>Pullus</i> , a chicken	<i>Poulet</i>	<i>Poult, Poultry</i>
<i>Puppis</i> , the stern of a ship	<i>Poupe</i>	<i>Poop</i>
<i>Ratio</i> , reason	<i>Raison</i>	<i>Reason</i>
<i>Recipere</i> , to receive	<i>Recevoir</i>	<i>Receive</i>
<i>Regnare</i> , to rule	<i>Regner</i>	<i>Reign</i>
<i>Rotundus</i>	<i>Rond</i>	<i>Round</i>
<i>Sapor</i> , taste	<i>Saveur</i>	<i>Savour</i>
<i>Supernus</i> , supreme	<i>Souverain</i>	<i>Sovereign</i>
<i>Tegula</i> , a tile	<i>Tuile</i>	<i>Tile</i>
<i>Traditor</i>	<i>Traître</i>	<i>Traitor</i>
<i>Visus</i> , a sight	<i>Vue</i>	<i>View</i>

* Many warlike instruments take their names from animals; as, *basilisk*, *falconet*, *ramrod*, &c.

† *Lift* is from the perfect participle of an obsolete verb *leve*, as *drift* from *drive*. It is still used as a participle in two instances in the Bible.

The *Greek* words which have been naturalized have also undergone, in general, a change of termination.

Thus, the termination *ia* is changed into *y*; as, from *prosodia*, *prosody*; from *apologia*, *apology*.

Ikos is changed into *ic* or *ical*; as, from *mechanikos*, *mechanic* or *mechanical*.

Ismos is changed into *ism*; as, from *aphorismos*, *aphorism*.

Ogos is changed into *ogue*; as, from *epilogos*, *epilogue*.

The number, however, of Latin and Greek words which have been adopted into English as separate words is comparatively small.

INSEPARABLE ROOTS.

The greater number of the Latin and Greek roots of the English language is found only in composition.

The changes which roots that are found only in composition undergo, cannot easily be reduced to general rules; but the following lists will sufficiently illustrate their nature:

LATIN ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION.

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Acris, sharp	<i>acri</i>	<i>acrimony</i>
Aedes, a house	<i>edi</i>	<i>edify, edifice</i>
Aequus, equal	<i>equ, equi</i>	<i>equanimity, equilibrium</i>
Aër, aëris, air	<i>aeri</i>	<i>aerial, aeriform</i>
Aevum, an age	<i>ev</i>	<i>coeval</i>
Ager, agri, a field	<i>agri</i>	<i>agriculture</i>
Agger, a heap	<i>agger</i>	<i>exaggerate</i>
Ago, I do, actus, done	<i>ag, act</i>	<i>agent, actor</i>
Ala, a wing	<i>ali</i>	<i>aliped</i>
Altus, high	<i>alt</i>	<i>exalt, altitude</i>
Amicus, a friend	<i>amic, imic</i>	<i>amicable, inimical</i>
Amo, I love	} <i>am, amor</i>	<i>amiable, amorous</i>
Amor, love		
Animus, mind	<i>anim</i>	<i>animate, unanimous, animadvert</i>
Annus, a year	<i>ann, annu, enni</i>	<i>annals, annual, biennial</i>
Aqua, water	<i>aqua, aque</i>	<i>aquatic, aqueduct</i>
Arceo, I drive away (erceo when compounded)	<i>erc</i>	<i>coercion</i>
Aro, a plough	<i>ar</i>	<i>arable</i>
Ars, artis, art	<i>art, ert</i>	<i>artful, inert</i>
Artus, the joints	<i>arti</i>	<i>articulate</i>
Asper, rough	<i>asper</i>	<i>asperity, exasperate</i>
Audio, I hear, auditus, heard	<i>audi, audit</i>	<i>audience, audit, auditory</i>
Augeo, I increase, auctus, increased	<i>aug, auct, auth</i>	<i>augment, auction, author</i>
Avis, a bird	<i>avi</i>	<i>aviary</i>
Beatus, blessed	<i>beati</i>	<i>beatitude</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Bellum, war	<i>belli, bel</i>	<i>belligerent, rebel</i>
Bellus, beautiful	<i>bell</i>	<i>embellish</i>
Bene, well	<i>bene</i>	<i>benediction</i>
Bibo, I drink	<i>bib</i>	<i>imbibe, wine-bibber</i>
Bini, two by two	<i>bin</i>	<i>combination</i>
Bis, twice	<i>bi</i>	<i>biped</i>
Brevis, short	<i>brev</i>	<i>brevity, abbreviate</i>
Cado, I fall, casus, fallen (changed into cido when compounded)	<i>cad, casu, cid</i>	<i>cadaverous, casual, accident</i>
Cædo, I cut, cæsus, cut (changed into cido and cîsus when compounded)	<i>cid, cis</i>	<i>homicide, incision, precise</i>
Calor, heat	<i>calor</i>	<i>caloric</i>
Cando, I set on fire, census, inflamed	<i>cand, cens, cend</i>	<i>incandescence, incense, incendiary</i>
Canis, a dog	<i>can</i>	<i>canine</i>
Cano, canto, I sing	<i>cant, cent</i>	<i>canticles, precentor</i>
Capillus, hair	<i>capill</i>	<i>capillary</i>
Caput, capitis, the head	<i>capit, cipit</i>	<i>capital, precipitate</i>
Capio, I take, captus, taken (cipio and ceptus when compounded)	<i>cap, capt, cip, cipi, cept</i>	<i>capable, capture, anticipate, recipient, reception</i>
Carcer, a prison	<i>carcer</i>	<i>incarcerate</i>
Caro, carnis, flesh	<i>carn</i>	<i>incarnate, carnivorous</i>
Carus, dear	<i>car</i>	<i>caress</i>
Cavus, hollow	<i>cav</i>	<i>excavate, concave</i>
Cedo, I give place, I go, cessus, giving place to	<i>ced, ceed, cess</i>	<i>recede, succeed, concession, access</i>
Celer, swift	<i>celer</i>	<i>accelerate, celerity</i>
Centum, a hundred	<i>cent</i>	<i>century, centennial</i>
Cerno, I see, I sift, cretus, sifted	<i>cern, cret, creet</i>	<i>discern, secretion, discreet</i>
Cete, whales	<i>cet</i>	<i>cetaceous</i>
Cinctus, girt about	<i>cinct</i>	<i>succinct, precincts</i>
Cio, I call, I summon	<i>cit</i>	<i>cite, citation</i>
Clamo, I cry out	<i>clam, claim</i>	<i>exclamation, proclaim</i>
Clarus, clear	<i>clar, clari</i>	<i>declare, clarify</i>
Claudo, I shut, clausus, shut (changed into cludo and clusus when compounded)	<i>claus, clud, clus</i>	<i>clause, exclude, seclusion</i>
Clino, I bend	<i>clin</i>	<i>recline</i>
Clivus, a slope	<i>cliv</i>	<i>declivity</i>
Coelum, heaven	<i>cel</i>	<i>celestial</i>
Colo, I cultivate, cultus, cultivated	<i>col, cult</i>	<i>colony, culture</i>
Comes, comitis, a companion	<i>com-comit</i>	<i>concomitant</i>
Copia, plenty	<i>copi</i>	<i>copious</i>
Coquo, I boil, coctus, boiled	<i>cook, coct</i>	<i>cook, decoction</i>
Cor, cordis, the heart	<i>cord</i>	<i>concord, cordial</i>
Cornu, a horn	<i>corn, cornu</i>	<i>unicorn, cornucopia</i>
Corpus, corporis, the body	<i>corpus, corpor</i>	<i>corpulence, incorporate, corpulent</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Cras, to-morrow	<i>cras</i>	procrastinate
Credo, I trust	<i>cred</i>	<i>credit, credulous, credible</i>
Cremo, I burn	<i>crem</i>	incremation
Crux, crucis, a cross	<i>cruci</i>	crucify
Cubo, I lie (cumbo when cub, cumb compounded)	<i>cub, cumb</i>	incubation, incumbent
Culpa, a fault, culpo, I find	<i>culp</i>	culpable, culprit
Cura, care	<i>cura, cur</i>	curator, sinecure
Curro, I run	<i>cur, curr, cour,</i>	incur, curricule, succour, ex-
Cursus, a running	<i>curs, cours</i>	cursion, intercourse
Datus, given (dius when dit compounded)		addition
Decor, decōris, grace, decor beauty	<i>decor</i>	decorous, decoration
Dens, dentis, a tooth	<i>dent</i>	dentist, dentifrice
Deus, dei, a god	<i>Dei</i>	Deity, deity
Dexter, right-handed, cle-	<i>dexter</i>	dexterity, dexterous
ver		
Dico, I say, dictus, said	<i>dict</i>	predict, dictate
Dies, day	<i>di</i>	dial, diary, meridian
Dignus, worthy	<i>digni</i>	dignity, dignitary
Diurnus, daily	<i>diurn, journ</i>	diurnal, journal
Docco, I teach, doctus, taught	<i>doc, doct</i>	docile, doctor, doctrine
Doleo, I grieve	<i>dol</i>	condole
Dolor, grief	<i>dolor</i>	dolorous
Domīnus, a master	<i>domin</i>	domineer, dominican
Domus, a house	<i>dom</i>	domestic, domicile
Donum, a gift	<i>don</i>	donation
Duco, I lead, ductus, led	<i>duc, duct</i>	induce, aqueduct
Duo, two	<i>du</i>	dual, duel
Durus, hard	<i>dur</i>	durable
Ebrius, drunken	<i>ebri</i>	ebriety, inebriate
Edo, I eat	<i>ed</i>	edible
Ego, I	<i>ego</i>	egotist
Emo, I buy, emptus, bought	<i>eem, empt</i>	redeem, exemption
Exter, outward	<i>exter</i>	external
Faber, a workman	<i>fabr</i>	fabric, fabricate
Facilis, easy.	<i>facil, facul, ficul</i>	facilitate, faculty, difficulty
Facio, I make, fio, I am made, factus, made (ficio and fectus when compounded)	<i>fact, fect, fit, fic, fy</i>	factor, perfect, benefit, porific, purify
Fallo, I deceive	<i>fall</i>	infallible, fallacious
Fanum, a temple	<i>fan, fane</i>	profanation, profane
Fari, to speak, fatus, having spoken	<i>fa, fat</i>	ineffable, fate
Felix, felicitas, happy	<i>felic</i>	felicity
Femīna, a woman	<i>femin</i>	feminine, effeminacy
Fero, I carry or bring	<i>fer</i>	ferry, infer, circumference
Ferveo, I boil	<i>ferv</i>	fervid, effervescence
Fidelis, faithful	<i>fidel</i>	fidelity
Fido, I trust	<i>fid</i>	confide, diffidence

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Filia, a daughter	} <i>fili</i>	filial, affiliate
Filius, a son		
Filum, a thread		filament
Fingo, I feign, fictus, feigned	<i>fig, fict</i>	figment, fiction, fictitious
Finis, an end	<i>fin</i>	final, finite, definite, definitive
Fiscus, the imperial treasury	<i>fisc</i>	fiscal, confiscate
Fissus, cleft	<i>fiss</i>	fissure
Flatus, a puff of wind	<i>flat, flatu</i>	inflation, flatulent
Flecto, I bend, flexus, bent	<i>flect, flex</i>	reflect, flexible
Fligo, I dash, fictus, dashed	<i>flict</i>	conflict
Flos, floris, a flower	<i>flor</i>	florist, floral
Fluctus, a wave	<i>fluctu</i>	fluctuate
Fluo, I flow, fluxus, a flowing	<i>flu, flux</i>	fluent, reflux
Foedus, foedēris, a treaty	<i>feder</i>	confederate
Foro, I bore or pierce	<i>for</i>	perforate
Fors, fortis, chance	<i>fort</i>	fortuitous
Fortis, strong	<i>forti</i>	fortify, fortitude
Fossa, a ditch	<i>foss</i>	fosse
Fossus, dug	<i>foss</i>	fossil
Frango, I break, fractus broken (fringo when compounded)	<i>frag, fract, fring</i>	fragment, fracture, infringe
Frater, a brother	<i>frater, fratri</i>	fraternal, fratricide
Frigeo, I am cold	<i>frig</i>	frigid, refrigeration
Fructus, fruit	<i>fructi</i>	fructify
Fruor, I enjoy	<i>fru</i>	fruition
Fugio, I fly, fugitum, to fly	<i>fug, fugit</i>	refuge, fugitive
Fulgeo, I shine	<i>fulg</i>	resurgent
Fulmen, fulminis, lightning	<i>fulmin</i>	fulminate
Fundo, I pour out, fusus poured out	<i>fund, fus</i>	refund, fusible, infuse
Gelu, frost	<i>gel, geal, gelat</i>	congelation, congeal, gelatinous
Gens, gentis, a nation	<i>gent</i>	gentile
Genu, a knee	<i>genu</i>	genuflexion
Gero, I carry, gestus, carried	<i>ger, gest</i>	belligerent, gesture, digestion
Genitus, begotten	<i>gen, genit</i>	progeny, progenitor
Genus, generis, kind	<i>gener, genera</i>	degenerate, generation
Glacies, ice	<i>glaci</i>	glacial, glacier
Glomus, glomeris, a clow	<i>glomer</i>	agglomeration
Grador, I go, gradus, a step, gressus, having gone	<i>grad, gred, gradu, gress</i>	retrograde, ingradient, graduate, aggression
Gramen, graminis, grass	<i>gramini</i>	graminivorous
Gravis, heavy	<i>grav</i>	gravity
Grege, gregis, a flock	<i>greg</i>	gregarious, egregious
Hæreo, I stick, hæsus, stuck	<i>her, hes</i>	adhere, cohesion
Hæres, hæredis, an heir	<i>hered, herit</i>	hereditary, inherit

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Halo, I breathe	<i>hal</i>	<i>exhale, exhalation</i>
Haustro, I draw, haustus, drawn	<i>haust</i>	<i>exhaust</i>
Homo, a man	<i>homi, hum</i>	<i>homicide, human</i>
Hortor, I exhort	<i>hort</i>	<i>exhort</i>
Hospes, hospitis, a guest	<i>hospit</i>	<i>hospitable</i>
Hostis, an enemy	<i>host</i>	<i>hostile</i>
Humus, the ground	<i>hum</i>	<i>inhumation, posthumous</i>
Idem, the same	<i>iden</i>	<i>identity</i>
Ignis, fire	<i>ign</i>	<i>ignition, igneous</i>
Infra, below	<i>infern</i>	<i>infernal</i>
Insula, an island	<i>insula, insul</i>	<i>peninsula, insulate</i>
Intra, intus, within	<i>inter, inti</i>	<i>internal, intimate</i>
Iter, itineris, a journey	<i>itiner</i>	<i>itinerate, itinerary</i>
Iterum, again	<i>iter</i>	<i>iteration</i>
Itum, to go	<i>it</i>	<i>exit, circuit, transit, section</i>
Jaceo, I lie	<i>jac</i>	<i>adjacent</i>
Jactus, thrown (jectus when compounded)	<i>ject</i>	<i>inject, conjecture</i>
Janua, a gate	<i>jan</i>	<i>janitor</i>
Jugum, a yoke	<i>jug</i>	<i>conjugate</i>
Junctus, joined	<i>junct</i>	<i>adjunct, conjunction</i>
Juro, I swear	<i>jur</i>	<i>conjure</i>
Jus, juris, right, law	<i>juris, juri</i>	<i>jurisdiction, juridical</i>
Jutus, assisted	<i>jut</i>	<i>adjutant, coadjutor</i>
Juvenis, a youth	<i>juven</i>	<i>juvenile</i>
Lacer, torn	<i>lacer</i>	<i>lacerate</i>
Lædo, I hurt, læsus, hurt (lido and lisus when compounded)	<i>lid, lis</i>	<i>collide, collision</i>
Lapis, lapidis, a stone	<i>lapid</i>	<i>lapidary, dilapidate</i>
Latus, carried	<i>lat</i>	<i>elation, translate</i>
Latus, wide	<i>lat, lati</i>	<i>dilate, latitude</i>
Latus, lateris, a side	<i>later</i>	<i>lateral, equilateral</i>
Legatus, an ambassador	<i>legat</i>	<i>delegate, legation</i>
Lego, I bequeath	<i>leg</i>	<i>legacy, legatee</i>
Lego, I gather, I choose, lectus, gathered	<i>leg, lect</i>	<i>allege, collect</i>
Lego, I read, lectus, read	<i>leg, lect</i>	<i>legible, lecture</i>
Lenis, gentle	<i>len</i>	<i>lenity, lenient</i>
Lentus, gentle	<i>lent</i>	<i>relent</i>
Levis, light	<i>lev, liev, lief</i>	<i>levity, relieve, relief</i>
Levo, I lighten, I lift up	<i>lev</i>	<i>elevate, lever</i>
Lex, legis, a law	<i>legis, leg</i>	<i>legislator, legal</i>
Liber, a book	<i>libr, libel</i>	<i>library, libel</i>
Liber, free	<i>liber</i>	<i>liberty, liberal, libertine</i>
Libra, a balance	<i>libr</i>	<i>libration, equilibrium</i>
Licet, it is lawful	<i>licit</i>	<i>illicit</i>
Lignum, wood	<i>lignum, lign</i>	<i>lignumvitæ, ligneous</i>
Ligo, I bind	<i>lig, liga</i>	<i>oblige, ligament</i>
Linquo, I leave, relictus left	<i>linqu, licit</i>	<i>relinquish, relict</i>
Liqueo, I melt	<i>lique, liqui</i>	<i>liquefaction, liquid</i>
Lis, litis, strife	<i>liti</i>	<i>litigious</i>
Litera, a letter	<i>liter</i>	<i>literal, literature</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Locus, a place	<i>loc, loco</i>	<i>locality, locomotion</i>
Longus, long	<i>long, longi</i>	<i>oblong, longitude</i>
Loqui, to speak	<i>loqui, loquy, loqu, locu</i>	<i>colloquial, obloquy, loquacity, ventriloquist, elocution</i>
Ludo, I play, lusus, deceived	<i>ludi, lus</i>	<i>ludicrous, illusion</i>
Lumen, luminis, light	<i>lumin</i>	<i>luminary</i>
Luna, the moon	<i>lun</i>	<i>lunatic, sublunary</i>
Lux, lucis, light	<i>luc</i>	<i>lucid</i>
Macies, leanness	<i>maci</i>	<i>emaciate</i>
Macula, a spot	<i>macul</i>	<i>immaculate</i>
Magnus, great	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnify</i>
Male, wickedly	<i>male, mal</i>	<i>malevolent, malversation</i>
Mando, I bid	<i>mand</i>	<i>command, mandate</i>
Mando, I chew	<i>mand</i>	<i>mandible</i>
Maneo, I stay	<i>man, main</i>	<i>permanent, remain</i>
Mano, I flow	<i>man</i>	<i>emanate</i>
Manus, a hand	<i>manu, mani</i>	<i>manual, manipulation</i>
Mare, the sea	<i>mar</i>	<i>marine, maritime</i>
Mars, martis, the god of war	<i>mart</i>	<i>martial</i>
Mater, matris, a mother	<i>mater, matri</i>	<i>maternal, matricide</i>
Mel, mellis, honey	<i>mell</i>	<i>mellifluous</i>
Melior, better	<i>melior</i>	<i>ameliorate</i>
Memor, mindful	<i>memor</i>	<i>memorable</i>
Mens, mentis, the mind	<i>ment</i>	<i>mental</i>
Mergo, I plunge, mersus, plunged	<i>merg, mers</i>	<i>emerge, immersion</i>
Metior, I measure, mensus, measured	<i>met, mensu</i>	<i>mete, commensurate</i>
Mille, a thousand	<i>mill</i>	<i>millennium</i>
Mirror, I gaze	<i>mir</i>	<i>mirror, admire</i>
Miser, wretched	<i>miser</i>	<i>miserable</i>
Mitis, mild	<i>mili</i>	<i>mitigate</i>
Mitto, I send, missus, sent	<i>mit, miss</i>	<i>remit, missionary</i>
Modus, a measure	<i>mod</i>	<i>mode, modify</i>
Mola, a millstone, flour	<i>mol</i>	<i>emolument</i>
Moles, a mass	<i>mol</i>	<i>molest, demolish</i>
Mollis, soft	<i>molli</i>	<i>emollient, mollify</i>
Moneo, I warn, monitus, warned	<i>mon, monit</i>	<i>admonish, monitor</i>
Mors, mortis, death	<i>mort</i>	<i>mortify, immortal</i>
Mos, moris, a manner	<i>mor</i>	<i>moral</i>
Multus, many	<i>multi</i>	<i>multiform, multitude</i>
Munitus, fortified	<i>munit</i>	<i>munition</i>
Munus, muneris, a gift	<i>muner</i>	<i>remunerate</i>
Murus, a wall	<i>mur</i>	<i>immure</i>
Muto, I change	<i>mut</i>	<i>mutable, commute</i>
Natus, born	<i>nat</i>	<i>native, natal</i>
Navis, a ship	<i>nav</i>	<i>naval, navigate</i>
Necto, I tie, nexus, tied	<i>nect, nex</i>	<i>connect, annex</i>
Nego, I deny	<i>neg</i>	<i>negative</i>
Nihil, nothing	<i>nihil</i>	<i>annihilate</i>
Nomen, nominis, a name	<i>nomin</i>	<i>nominal, denominate</i>
Non, not	<i>non</i>	<i>nonentity</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Norma, a rule	<i>norm</i>	<i>enormous</i>
Novus, new	<i>nov</i>	<i>innovate, novice</i>
Nox, noctis, night	<i>nox, noct</i>	<i>equinox, nocturnal</i>
Nubo, I marry, nuptus, married	<i>nub, nupt</i>	<i>connubial, nuptials</i>
Nudus, naked	<i>nud</i>	<i>denudo</i>
Nugæ, trifles	<i>nug</i>	<i>nugatory</i>
Numerus, a number	<i>numer</i>	<i>numeration</i>
Nuncio, I tell	<i>nunci, nounc</i>	<i>annunciation, renounce</i>
Nutrio, I nourish	<i>nutri</i>	<i>nutriment</i>
Octo, eight	<i>oct</i>	<i>octagon, octave</i>
Oculus, the eye	<i>ocul</i>	<i>oculist</i>
Oleo, I smell	<i>ol</i>	<i>olfactory, redolent</i>
Omnis, all	<i>omni</i>	<i>omnipotent</i>
Onus, onëris, a burden	<i>oner</i>	<i>onerous, exonerate</i>
Opto, I wish	<i>opt</i>	<i>adopt, option</i>
Opus, opëris, a work	<i>oper</i>	<i>opero, operation</i>
Orbis, a circle	<i>orbi</i>	<i>orbicular</i>
Orno, I deck	<i>orn</i>	<i>adorn, ornament</i>
Oro, I beg	<i>ora</i>	<i>inexorable, orator</i>
Os, oris, the mouth	<i>or</i>	<i>oral, oration, orifice</i>
Os, ossis, a bone	<i>oss</i>	<i>ossify</i>
Otium, ease	<i>oti</i>	<i>otiose, negotiate</i>
Ovum, an egg	<i>ov</i>	<i>oval, oviform</i>
Pactus, having bargained	<i>pact</i>	<i>compact</i>
Pando, I spread, passus or pansus, spread	<i>pand, pass, pans</i>	<i>expand, compass, expanse</i>
Par, equal	<i>par</i>	<i>parity</i>
Parco, I appear	<i>par</i>	<i>apparent</i>
Pario, I produce	<i>par</i>	<i>parent, viviparous</i>
Paro, I prepare	<i>par, pair</i>	<i>reparation, repair</i>
Pastus, fed	<i>past</i>	<i>pastor, repast</i>
Pater, patris, a father	<i>pater, patri, parri</i>	<i>paternal, patrimony, parri- cide</i>
Pator, I suffer, passus, having suffered	<i>pati, pass</i>	<i>patient, passive, passion</i>
Pauci, few	<i>pauci</i>	<i>paucity</i>
Pax, pacis, peace	<i>paci</i>	<i>pacific</i>
Pecco, I sin	<i>pecc</i>	<i>impeccable</i>
Pectus, pectōris, the breast	<i>pector</i>	<i>expectorate</i>
Peculium, property	<i>pecul</i>	<i>peculation</i>
Pecunia, money	<i>pecuni</i>	<i>pecuniary</i>
Pello, I drive away, pulsus, driven	<i>pel, puls</i>	<i>expel, repulsion</i>
Pendo, I hang, I weigh, pensus, hung, weighed	<i>pend, pens</i>	<i>depend, pendulum, stipend, pensive, compensate</i>
Pene, almost	<i>pen</i>	<i>peninsula</i>
Pes, pedis, the foot	<i>ped</i>	<i>biped, pedestal</i>
Peto, I seek, pctitus, sought	<i>pet, petit</i>	<i>centripetal, competition</i>
Pingo, I paint, pictus, painted	<i>paint, pict</i>	<i>painter, depict</i>
Piscis, a fish, piscor, I fish	<i>pisca</i>	<i>piscatory</i>
Placeo, I please	<i>plac</i>	<i>placid</i>
Placo, I appease	<i>plac</i>	<i>implorable</i>
Plebs, the common people	<i>pleb</i>	<i>plebeian</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Plenus, full	<i>plen</i>	<i>replenish, plenitude</i>
Pleo, I fill, pletus, filled	<i>ply, plet</i>	<i>supply, complete, expletive</i>
Plico, I fold	<i>plie</i>	<i>complicate</i>
Ploro, I wail	<i>plor</i>	<i>deplore</i>
Plumbum, lead	<i>plumb, plum</i>	<i>plumber, plummet</i>
Pono, I place, positus, placed	<i>pon, pos, posit</i>	<i>depone, impose, position</i>
Populus, the people	<i>popul</i>	<i>popular</i>
Porto, I carry	<i>port</i>	<i>export, portable</i>
Poto, I drink	<i>pot</i>	<i>potion</i>
Praeda, plunder	<i>preda</i>	<i>predatory, depredation</i>
Pravus, wicked	<i>prav</i>	<i>depravity</i>
Precor, I pray	<i>prec</i>	<i>deprecate</i>
Prehendo, I take, prehensus, taken	<i>prehend, prehens</i>	<i>apprehend, comprehension</i>
Pretium, a price	<i>preci</i>	<i>appreciate</i>
Probo, I prove	<i>prob</i>	<i>probable</i>
Probus, good	<i>prob</i>	<i>probity</i>
Pudens, pudentis, bashful	<i>pudent</i>	<i>impudent</i>
Puer, a boy	<i>puer</i>	<i>puerile</i>
Pugna, a fight	<i>pugn</i>	<i>pugnacious, impugn</i>
Puto, I lop, I think	<i>put</i>	<i>amputate, reputation, dis- pute</i>
Putris, rotten	<i>putr</i>	<i>putrefaction</i>
Quaero, I ask, quaesitus, sought	<i>quir, quest, qui- sit, quer</i>	<i>inquire, inquest, requisition, query</i>
Quassus, shaken (cussus when compounded)	<i>cuss</i>	<i>discuss, percussion</i>
Quatuor, four	<i>quadr</i>	<i>quadrangle</i>
Queror, I complain	<i>quer</i>	<i>querulous</i>
Quinque, five	<i>quingu</i>	<i>quinquennial</i>
Radix, radices, a root	<i>radic</i>	<i>radical, eradicate</i>
Ramus, a branch	<i>ram</i>	<i>ramification</i>
Rasus, scraped	<i>ras</i>	<i>rasor, erase</i>
Ratio, rationis, reason	<i>ration</i>	<i>rational</i>
Rectus, straight	<i>recti</i>	<i>rectilinear</i>
Rego, I rule, rectus, ruled	<i>reg, rect</i>	<i>regal, rector</i>
Rete, a net	<i>reti</i>	<i>reticulate, retina</i>
Rideo, I laugh at, risus, laughed at	<i>rid, ris</i>	<i>deride, risible</i>
Rigo, I water	<i>rig</i>	<i>irrigate</i>
Rodo, I gnaw, rosus, gnawed	<i>rod, ros</i>	<i>corrode, corrosion</i>
Rota, a wheel	<i>rola</i>	<i>rotation</i>
Rumen, ruminis, the throat	<i>rumin</i>	<i>ruminate</i>
Ruptus, broken	<i>rupt</i>	<i>bankrupt, eruption</i>
Rus, ruris, the country	<i>rus, rur</i>	<i>rustic, rural</i>
Sacer, sacri, sacred	<i>sacri, secr</i>	<i>sacrifice, consecrate</i>
Sal, salt	<i>sal</i>	<i>saline</i>
Salio, I leap, saltus, leapt (silio and eultus when compounded)	<i>sali, sault, sil, sult</i>	<i>salient, assault, reside, in- sult</i>
Salvus, safe	<i>salv</i>	<i>salvation</i>
Sanctus, holy	<i>sanct</i>	<i>sanctify</i>
Satis, enough	<i>satis, sati</i>	<i>satisfy, satiate</i>
Satur, full	<i>satur</i>	<i>saturate</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Saxum, a rock	saxi	saxifrage
Scando, I climb (scendo when compounded)	scend	ascend
Scindo, I cleave, scissus, cleft	scind, sciss	rescind, rescissory
Scio, I know	sci	science, prescience
Scribo, I write, scriptus, written	scrib, script	inscribe, scripture
Scrutor, I search diligently	scrut	scrutiny, inscrutable
Scurra, a scoffer	scurr	scurrility
Seco, I cut, sectus, cut	sect	dissect, sectarian
Sedeo, I sit, sessus, sat	sed, sid, sess	sedentary, assiduous, pre-side, session
Semen, seminis, seed	semin	disseminate, seminary
Semi, half	semi	semicircle
Senex, senis, old	seni	senility
Sentio, I feel, sensus, felt	sent, sens	sentient, sensation, dissent
Sequor, I follow, secutus, having followed	sequ, secut	obsequies, subsequent, persecute
Sidus, sidēris, a star	sider	sidereal
Silva, a wood	silv	silvan
Similis, like	simil	similar, similitude
Simul, at the same time	simul	simultaneous
Simulo, I feign	simul	dissimulation
Socius, a companion	soci	social, society
Sol, the sun	sol	solar, solstice
Solor, I comfort	sol	console
Solus, alone	sol, soli	sole, solitude, soliloquy
Solve, I loose, solutus, loosed	solv, solu, solut	dissolve, soluble, solution
Somnus, sleep	somni	somniferous
Sopor, soporis, sleep	sopor	soporific
Sorbeo, I suck in, sorptus, sucked in	sorb, sorpt	absorbent, absorption
Sors, sortis, a lot	sort	assort, consort
Sparsus, spread (aspersus when compounded)	spers	disperse, aspersion
Species, a forin	speci	specific
Specio, I see, spectus, seen	speci, spect	specious, aspect
Specula, a watch-tower	specul	speculate
Spero, I hope	sper, spair	desperate, despair
Spiro, I breathe	spir	respiration, expire (ecspire) conspiracy
Spondeo, I promise, sponsus, promised	spond, spons	respond, response, sponsor
Stillo, I drop	stil	distil
Stinguo, I put out, stinctus, extinguished	stingu, stinct	extinguish, extinct
Stipula, a straw	stipul	stipulate
Stirps, the trunk of a tree, offspring	stirp	extirpate (ec-stirpate)
Sto, I stand, stans, standing, statum, to stand	stat, stant, stic	stature, distant, solstice
Stringo, I bind, strictus, bound	string, strict	astringent, restrict

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Struo, I pile up, structus, piled up	struct, strue, stroy	structure, construe, destroy
Stultus, a fool	stulti	stultify
Suadeo, I advise, suasus, advised	suad, suas	dissuade, persuasive
Suavis, sweet	suav	suavity
Sumo, I take, sumptus, taken	sum, sumpt	assume, consumption
Surgo, I rise, surrectus, risen	surg, surrect	insurgent, resurrection
Tango, I touch, tactus, touched	tang, tig, tact	tangent, contiguous, contact
Tardus, slow	tard	tardy, retard
Tego, I cover, tectus, covered	teg, tect	integument, protect
Tempus, temporis, time	tempor	temporal, contemporary
Tendo, I stretch, tentus, stretched	tend, tent, tens	distend, tent, extent, intense
Teneo, I hold, tentus, held	ten, tain, tin, tent	tenant, contain, continent, detention
Tenuis, thin	tenu	tenuity, attenuate
Tepeo, I am warm	tep, tepe	tepid, tepefaction
Terra, the earth	terr, ter	terraqueous, inter
Testis, a witness	test	testify, attest
Textus, woven	text	texture, context
Tollo, I lift up	tol	extol
Tortus, twisted	tort	tortuous, extort
Traho, I draw, tractus, drawn	trah, tract	subtrahend, tractable, extract
Tritus, rubbed	trit	trituration
Trudo, I thrust, trusus, thrust	trud	intrude, obtrusion
Tueor, I see, I protect, I look	tuil	tuition, intuitive
Turba, a crowd	turb	turbulent, disturb
Turpis, base	turp	turpitude
Uber, fertile	uber	exuberant
Umbra, a shadow	umbra, umbr	umbrageous, umbrella
Unda, a wave	und	undulate, inundate
Unguo, I anoint, unctus, anointed	ungu, unct	unguent, unction
Unus, one	un, uni	unanimous, uniform
Urbs, a city	urbs, urb	suburbs, urban
Ustus, burnt	ust	combustion
Utilis, useful	util	utility
Uxor, a wife	uxor	uxorious
Vacca, a cow	vacc	vaccination
Vaco, I am empty	vac	vacation, vacancy
Vado, I go	vacu	evacuate, vacuum
Vagor, I wander	vad, vas, wade	invade, invasion, wade
Valeo, I am strong	vag, vagr	vagabond, vagrant
Vasto, I lay waste	val, vail	prevail, prevail
Veho, I carry	vast, waste	devastation, waste
Venio, I come, ventus, come	vehi, vey	vehicle, convey
	ven, vent	convene, advent

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Ver, the spring	<i>ver</i>	<i>vernal</i>
Verto, I turn, versus, turned	<i>vert, vers</i>	<i>revert, divers, versatile</i>
Verus, true	<i>ver</i>	<i>verity, aver</i>
Vestis, a garment	<i>vest</i>	<i>vestment, invest</i>
Vetus, veteris, old	<i>veter</i>	<i>veteran</i>
Via, a way	<i>vi</i>	<i>obviate, obvious</i>
Video, I see, visus, seen	<i>vid, vis</i>	<i>provide, visible</i>
Vigil, watchful	<i>vigil</i>	<i>vigilant</i>
Vinco, I conquer, victus, conquered	<i>vinc, vic</i>	<i>invincible, victory</i>
Vita, life	<i>vit</i>	<i>vital</i>
Vivo, I live, victum, to live	<i>viv, vict</i>	<i>vivid, survive, victuals</i>
Voco, I call, vocatus, called	<i>voc, vok, vocat</i>	<i>irrevocable, revoke, vocal-ive</i>
Volo, I will, I wish	<i>vol</i>	<i>voluntary, benevolent</i>
Volo, I fly	<i>vol</i>	<i>volatile</i>
Volvo, I roll, volutus, rolled	<i>volv, volut</i>	<i>revolve, revolution</i>
Voro, I devour	<i>vor</i>	<i>voracious, carnivorous</i>
Vulgus, the rabble	<i>vulg</i>	<i>vulgar, divulge</i>
Vulsus, pulled	<i>vuls</i>	<i>convulsion</i>

LATIN ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION, WHICH HAVE PASSED INTO ENGLISH THROUGH THE MEDIUM OF THE FRENCH.

Root and Meaning.	French.	Example.
Campus, a field	<i>Champ</i>	<i>Champaign</i>
Carus, dear	<i>Chère</i>	<i>Cherish</i>
Diurnus, daily	<i>Jour, a day</i>	<i>Adjourn</i>
Lex, law	<i>Loi</i>	<i>Loyal</i>
Liberare, to free	<i>Livrer</i>	<i>Deliver</i>
Opus, operis, a work	<i>Œuvre</i>	<i>Manœuvre</i>
Rex, regis, a king	<i>Roi</i>	<i>Royal, viceroy</i>
Velo, I cover	<i>Veloper</i>	<i>Envelope</i>

GREEK ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION.

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Adelphos, a brother	<i>adelph</i>	<i>philadelphia</i>
Aethlos, a combat	<i>athlet</i>	<i>athletic</i>
Agōgos, a leader	<i>agogu</i>	<i>demagogue</i>
Akouo, I hear	<i>acous</i>	<i>acoustics</i>
Anthos, a flower	<i>antho</i>	<i>anthology</i>
Anthrōpos, a man	<i>anthrop</i>	<i>philanthropy</i>
Archē, beginning, sovereignty	<i>arch</i>	<i>heptarchy, archbishop</i>
Aristos, best	<i>aristo</i>	<i>aristocrat</i>
Arithmos, number	<i>arithm</i>	<i>arithmetic</i>
Astron, a star	<i>astro</i>	<i>astronomy</i>
Atmos, vapour	<i>atmo</i>	<i>atmosphere</i>
Autos, self	<i>auto</i>	<i>autograph</i>
Bapto, I dip	<i>bapt</i>	<i>baptism</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Baros, weight	<i>baro</i>	<i>barometer</i>
Biblion, a book	<i>biblio</i>	<i>bibliography</i>
Bios, life	<i>bio</i>	<i>biography</i>
Cheir, the hand	<i>chir</i>	<i>chirography</i>
Cholē, bile	<i>cholē</i>	<i>choleric</i>
Chronos, time	<i>chrono</i>	<i>chronometer</i>
Chrysos, gold	<i>chryso</i>	<i>chrysolite</i>
Deka, ten	<i>deca</i>	<i>decatalogue</i>
Demos, the people	<i>dem, demo</i>	<i>epidemic, democracy</i>
Dendron, a tree	<i>dendr, dendron</i>	<i>dendretic, rhododendron</i>
Doxo, I will think, dedogma, I have been judged, doxē, an opinion	<i>dox, dogma</i>	<i>orthodox, dogmatize</i>
Dromos, a course	<i>drom</i>	<i>hippodrome, dromedary</i>
Drus, an oak	<i>dru, dry</i>	<i>druid, dryad</i>
Dynamis, power	<i>dynam</i>	<i>dynamics</i>
Eidos, a form	<i>eido</i>	<i>kaleidoscope</i>
Epos, a word	<i>ep</i>	<i>epic, orthoepy</i>
Erēmos, a desert	<i>erem</i>	<i>eremite (hermit)</i>
Ergon, work	<i>erg, urg</i>	<i>energetic, metallurgy</i>
Ethos, a custom	<i>eth</i>	<i>ethical</i>
Eu, well	<i>eu, ev</i>	<i>eulogy, evangelist</i>
Gamos, a marriage	<i>gam</i>	<i>bigamy</i>
Gaster, the belly	<i>gastr</i>	<i>gastric, gastronomy</i>
Gē, the earth	<i>geo</i>	<i>geography</i>
Geno, I produce	<i>gen</i>	<i>oxygen, hydrogen</i>
Genos, kind or race	<i>gen</i>	<i>heterogeneous</i>
Glossa, glotta, the tongue	<i>gloss, glot</i>	<i>glossary, polyglot</i>
Gonia, a corner, an angle	<i>gon</i>	<i>polygon</i>
Gramma, a letter, writing	<i>gram</i>	<i>epigram, grammar</i>
Grapho, I write, graphē, a writing	<i>graph</i>	<i>autograph, hydrography</i>
Gyros, a circle	<i>gyr</i>	<i>gyration</i>
Hagios, holy	<i>hagio</i>	<i>hagiography</i>
Hecaton, a hundred	<i>heca</i>	<i>hecatomb</i>
Helios, the sun	<i>helion</i>	<i>aphelion</i>
Hemera, a day	<i>hemer</i>	<i>ephemeral</i>
Hepta, seven	<i>hepta</i>	<i>heptagon</i>
Heteros, dissimilar	<i>hetero</i>	<i>heterodox</i>
Hex, six	<i>hexa</i>	<i>hexagon</i>
Hiēros, holy	<i>hier</i>	<i>hierarchy</i>
Hippos, a horse	<i>hippo</i>	<i>hippopotamus</i>
Hodos, a way	<i>od</i>	<i>exodus</i>
Homos, similar	<i>homo</i>	<i>homologous</i>
Hydor, water	<i>hydro</i>	<i>hydrostatics</i>
Hygros, wet	<i>hygro</i>	<i>hygrometer</i>
Icthy, a fish	<i>ichthy</i>	<i>ichthyology</i>
Isos, equal	<i>iso</i>	<i>isoperimetrical</i>
Kakos, bad	<i>caco</i>	<i>cacophony</i>
Kalos, handsome	<i>kal</i>	<i>kaleidoscope</i>
Kalypto, I cover, kalypso, I will cover	<i>calypt, calyps</i>	<i>apocalyptic, apocalypse</i>
Kephālē, the head	<i>cephal</i>	<i>hydrocephalus, cephalic</i>
Kosmos, the world, order	<i>cosm</i>	<i>microcosm, cosmetic</i>
Kratos, strength	<i>crac, crat</i>	<i>aristocracy, aristocratic</i>
Kyklos, a circle	<i>cycl</i>	<i>epicycle</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Laos, the people	<i>lai</i>	<i>laity</i>
Lithos, a stone	<i>litho, lit</i>	<i>lithography, chrysolite</i>
Logos, a word, description	<i>logo, logy, logu</i>	<i>logomachy, chronology, catalogu</i>
Machè, a fight	<i>mach</i>	<i>naumachy</i>
Metron, a measure	<i>metr, meter</i>	<i>geometry, thermometer</i>
Micros, little	<i>micro</i>	<i>microscope</i>
Misos, hatred	<i>mis</i>	<i>misanthrops</i>
Monos, alone	<i>mono</i>	<i>monosyllable</i>
Morphè, shape	<i>morph</i>	<i>metamorphosis</i>
Mythos, a fable	<i>mytho</i>	<i>mythology</i>
Naus, a ship	<i>naut</i>	<i>nautical</i>
Nekros, dead	<i>necro</i>	<i>necromancy</i>
Neos, new	<i>neo</i>	<i>neology</i>
Nesos, an island	<i>nesus</i>	<i>Peloponnesus</i>
Nomos, a law	<i>nom</i>	<i>astronomy</i>
Nosos, sickness	<i>noso</i>	<i>nosology</i>
Oikeo, I dwell	<i>oeci, ochi</i>	<i>antoece, perioeci, parochial</i>
Oligos, little, few	<i>olig</i>	<i>oligarchy</i>
Ophis, a serpent	<i>ophi</i>	<i>ophiology</i>
Optōmai, I see	<i>opti</i>	<i>optical</i>
Ornis, ornithos, a bird	<i>ornitho</i>	<i>ornithology</i>
Orthos, right	<i>ortho</i>	<i>orthography</i>
Oxys, acid	<i>oxy</i>	<i>oxygen</i>
Pais, paidos, a boy	<i>ped</i>	<i>pedagogue</i>
Pathos, feeling	<i>path</i>	<i>apathy, antipathy</i>
Pentè, five	<i>pent</i>	<i>pentagon</i>
Petra, a stone	<i>petra, petri</i>	<i>petralogy, petrification</i>
Phagein, to eat	<i>phag</i>	<i>anthropophagi</i>
Philos, a friend	<i>philo, phil</i>	<i>philosophy, philanthropy</i>
Phobeo, I terrify	<i>phob</i>	<i>hydrophobia</i>
Phonè, the voice	<i>phon</i>	<i>euphony</i>
Phren, the mind	<i>phren</i>	<i>phrenology, phrensy</i>
Phthongos, a sound	<i>phthong</i>	<i>diphthong</i>
Polèmos, war	<i>polem</i>	<i>polemical</i>
Poleo, I sell	<i>pol</i>	<i>bibliopole</i>
Polis, a city	<i>polis</i>	<i>metropolis</i>
Polys, many	<i>poly</i>	<i>polygon</i>
Potāmos, a river	<i>potamus</i>	<i>hippopotamus</i>
Pseudo, I deceive	<i>pseudo</i>	<i>pseudo-apostle</i>
Pyr, pyros, fire	<i>pyro</i>	<i>pyrometer</i>
Sarks, sarkos, flesh, the body	<i>sarco</i>	<i>sarcophagus</i>
Sitos, corn, food	<i>sit</i>	<i>parasite</i>
Skopeo, I see	<i>scop</i>	<i>telescope</i>
Sophos, wise	<i>soph</i>	<i>sophist, philosophy</i>
Stello, I send	<i>stle, stal</i>	<i>apostle, peristaltic</i>
Strepho, I turn	<i>streph</i>	<i>peristrephe</i>
Tele, distant	<i>tele</i>	<i>telescope</i>
Technè, art	<i>techn</i>	<i>technical</i>
Thapto, I bury	<i>taph</i>	<i>epitaph</i>
Theos, God	<i>the, thus</i>	<i>atheist, enthusiast</i>
Tithēmi, I put, I suppose, thesis, a position	<i>thesis, thet</i>	<i>hypothesis, hypothetical</i>
Topos, a place	<i>topo</i>	<i>topography</i>
Zoon, an animal	<i>zoo, zo</i>	<i>zoology, azote</i>

The Prepositions and Conjunctions are the most difficult words in the English language to trace to their origin, as well as the most irregular in the changes which they have undergone.

Formerly it was the practice of grammarians to describe these parts of speech rather as the pegs and nails that fasten the several parts of the language together, than as parts of the language itself.* But since the researches of Horne Tooke and Dr. John Hunter have thrown light on their history, it is universally held that they are abbreviations, corruptions, or combinations of other words, especially of verbs and nouns.

The leading prepositions are of Saxon origin. Thus,

After is from *aft*, the hind or back part of a thing; now disused except by seamen.

About is from *abuta*, the verge or extremity of a thing.

Above is from *ufa*, high.

Amid or *amidst* is compounded of *a*, on or in, and *mid*, the middle.

Among is from *gemong*, mixed, the perfect participle of *mangan*, to mix.

Before is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *fore*.

Behind is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *hind*.

Below is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *low*.

Beneath is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *neath*, low (from whence *nether* and *nethermost*).

Beside or *besides* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the noun *side*.

Between is compounded of the imperative *be* and the numeral adjective *twain*.

Beyond is compounded of the imperative *be* and *goned*, the perfect participle of *gan*, to go.

Byt is the imperative of *beon*, to be.

For is from *faran*, passing to wards, consequence or object; as, "They contend *for* victory;" that is, the consequence or object being victory.

From is from *frum*, beginning or source; as, "Figs come *from* Turkey;" that is, the source or beginning being Turkey.

Near and *nigh* are the adjectives *neahr*, *nih*, contiguous.

* This is the language even of Monbodo, the most philosophical of our old grammarians.

† Our ancestors wrote either *be* or *by*; as, "Damville *be* right ought to have the leading of the army." The force of this preposition is to express one thing as the cause or means of another; as, "Damville *by* right," that is, *right being*, "ought to have the leading of the army."—TOOKE.

*Of** (generally pronounced *ov*) is from *have*, to possess; as, "The city of David;" that is, possessed by David.

Over is from *ufer*, the comparative of *ufa*, high; as, "He stood *over* me;" that is, *higher* than I. *Up*, *upper*, *uppermost*, have the same origin.

Save is the imperative of the verb *save*.

Through is from *thuruk*, a door or gate; as, "The eagle flies *through* the air;" that is, the air being the passage.

Thorough is of the same origin; also *door*.

Till is compounded of the preposition *to* and *while*, time.

To is the same originally with *do*, and signifies act or completion of an act. It is opposed to *from*, the beginning; as, "Figs come *from* Turkey *to* England;" that is, Turkey being the beginning, England the finishing or end.

Toward is compounded of *to* and *ward*, the imperative of *wardian*, to look at; as, "I move *towards* the city;" that is, with my view directed to the city. *Ward*, to guard, is of the same origin.

With is the imperative of *withan*, to join; as, "A house *with* a party wall;" that is, "A house, *join* a party wall."

Without is from *withutan*, the imperative of *wyrthanutan*, to be out.

Withouten occurs as a preposition in old English writers, and is still used in Scottish poetry.

The leading Conjunctions are also of Saxon origin. Thus,

And is an abbreviation of *anad*, the imperative of *ananad*, to add; as, "Two *and* two make four;" that is, "Two *add* two make four."

As is the same with *es*, equal.

But is from *bot*, the imperative of *botun*, to superadd; as, "I came expecting to find you, *but* I was disappointed;" that is, "Add, I was disappointed." "To boot" is of the same origin. The preposition *but* is an abbreviation of *be out*, or *by out*, and signifies *unless* or *except*; as, "I saw nobody *but* John;" that is, "unless" or "except" John.

Either is the same with the adjective *either*, one of two; as, "It is *either* day or night;" that is, "One of the two, day or night."

Eke is the imperative of *eke*, to add; as, "John Gilpin was a citizen; a train-band captain *eke* was he;" that is, "Add, a train-band captain was he."

Else is the imperative of *alesan*, to dismiss; as, "Give me the book, or *else* I will go;" that is, "Omit to give me the book, and I will go."

* *Of* is so vague in its signification, that it may be used for many of the other prepositions. Thus, we can say, a descendant *of* or *from*; a friend *of* or *to*; hatred *of* or *for*; an associate *of* or *with*; beloved *of* or *by*, &c. But *possession* is probably its original signification, in common with that of the termination of the possessive case, to which it is equivalent.

If is from the imperative *gif* or *gifan*, to give or grant; as, "If I go;" that is, "Gif or give, suppose, grant, that I go."

Lest is contracted for *lesed*, the participle of *lesan*, to dismiss; as, "Take care *lest* you fall;" that is, "Take care; *this being dismissed*, you fall."

Or is a contraction for the numeral adjective *other*; as, "Give me *either* the black *or* the white;" that is, "Give me *one of the two*—the black, *other* the white."

Since is the participle of *seon*, to see, and is equivalent to *seeing*; as, "Since it is so;" that is, "Seeing it is so."

Still is from *stell*, the imperative of *stellan*, to suppose; as, "Though I desired him to depart, *still* he is not gone;" that is, "Suppose or remark, he is not gone."

That is from *theat*, the perfect participle of *thean*, to assume or suppose; as, "I believe *that* your statement is correct;" that is, "I believe *the thing assumed*, viz. your statement, is correct." *That* is conveniently considered as alike an adjective pronoun, a relative pronoun, and a conjunction; but it is in all cases originally and really a participle or adjective.

Then is from the present participle of *thean*, to assume or suppose; as, "So *then*, they that are in the flesh cannot please God;" that is, "So, assuming *whit has been just advanced*, they that are in the flesh cannot please God."

Though is from the imperative of *thohte*,* to think or suppose; as, "Though he was learned, he was modest;" that is, "Suppose he was learned."

Unless is from *onles*, the imperative of *onlesan*, to dismiss; as, "Un-*less* ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish;" that is, "Dismiss the supposition—ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."

Yet is from the imperative of *getan*, to get; as, "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him;" that is, "Suppose he slay me, *get or obtain this*, I will trust in him."

II. ORIGIN OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.

English Derivatives are formed chiefly by attaching to the Root, or essential part of a word, certain *Prefixed* and *Affixed*.

A *Prefix* is a particle placed before a root to vary its sense; as, *superstructure*, *rebuild*.

* This account of *though* is from Dr. Jamieson, who says that the form in which it occurs in our most ancient MSS. is *thocht* and *althocht*. Tooke derives it from the imperative of *thafan*, to allow.

An *Affix* or *termination* is a particle added to the root to vary its signification; as, plentiful, darkish.

A derivative formed by means of a prefix is always of the same part of speech with its root, provided that root exist as a separate word in the language; as, *turn*, return; *navigation*, circumnavigation.

A derivative formed by means of an affix has the part of speech to which it belongs determined by the affix rather than by the root; as, *life*, lifeless; *brother*, brotherly.

Prefixes are chiefly prepositions, and are of as great diversity of origin as the roots which they modify.

The following are the prefixes of purely English or Saxon origin, with their import:—

A signifies *on* or *in*; as, *a-foot*, that is, *on foot*; *a-bed*, that is, *in bed*.
Be signifies *about*; as, *besprinkle*, that is, *sprinkle about*; also *for* or *before*; as, *bespeak*, that is, *speak for* or *before*.

En signifies *in* or *on*; as, *encircle*, that is, *circle in*; also, *make*; as, *enfeeble*, that is, *make feeble*. (*En* is changed into *em* in roots beginning with *b* or *p*; as, *embark*, *empower*.)

Fore signifies *before*; as, *foresee*, that is, *see beforehand*.

Mis denotes *error* or *defect*; as, *misdeed*, that is, *a wrong* or *evil deed*.

Out denotes *excess* or *superiority*; as, *outrun*, that is, *surpass in running*.

Over denotes *eminence* or *excess*; as, *overcharge*, that is, *to charge too much*.

Un, before an adjective or adverb, signifies *not*; as, *unworthy*, that is, *not worthy*; *un*,* before a verb, signifies the *undoing* of the act expressed by the verb; as, *unfetter*, that is, *to take off fetters*.

Up denotes motion upwards; as, *upstart*;—also *subversion*; as, *upset*.

With signifies *from* or *against*; as, *withdraw*, that is, *draw from*; *withstand*, that is, *stand against*.

The following are the prefixes of Latin origin, with their import:—

A, *ab*, *abs*, signify *from* or *away*; as, *avert*, that is, *turn from*; *absolve*, that is, *loose from*; *abstain*, that is, *hold from*.

Ad signifies *to*; as, *adhere*, that is, *stick to*. (*Ad* assumes the various forms of *a*, *ac*, *af*, *ag*, *al*, *an*, *ap*, *ar*, *as*, *at*, according to the commencing letter of the root with which it is joined; as, *ascend*, *accede*, *affix*, *aggrandize*, *allot*, *annex*, *appeal*, *arrest*, *assume*, *attract*.)

Am signifies *round about*; as, *ambient*.

Ante signifies *before*; as, *antecedent*, that is, *going before*.

* *Un* is sometimes prefixed to a verb without altering the sense; as, *loose*, *undo*.

Circum signifies *round* or *about*; as, *circumnavigate*, that is, *sail round*.

Cis signifies *on this side*; as, *cisalpine*, that is, *on this side the Alps*.

Con signifies *together*; as, *convolve*, that is, *call together*. (*Con* takes also the various forms of *co*, *cog*, *col*, *com*, *cor*; as, *co-operate*, *cognate*, *collect*, *commotion*, *correlative*.)

Contra signifies *against*; as, *contradict*, that is, *speak against*. (*Contra* sometimes takes the form *counter*; as, *counterbalance*.)

De signifies *down*; as, *deject*, that is, *cast down*.

Dis signifies *asunder*; as, *distract*, that is, *draw asunder*; also *negation* or *undoing*; as, *disarm*, that is, *take arms from*. (*Dis* has also the forms of *di* and *dif*; as, *diverge*, *diffuse*.)

E, *ex*, signify *out of*; as, *egress*, that is, *going out*; *exclude*, that is, *shut out*. (*E*, *ex*, take also the form of *ec*, *ef*; as, *eccentric*, *efflux*.)

Extra signifies *beyond*; as, *extraordinary*, that is, *beyond ordinary*.

In, before an adjective, signifies *not*; as, *inactive*, that is, *not active*; *in*, before a verb, signifies *in* or *into*; as, *inject*, that is, *throw in* or *into*. (*In* has also the various forms of *ig*, *il*, *im*, *ir*; as, *ignoble*, *illuminate*, *import*, *irradiate*.)

Inter signifies *between*; as, *intervene*, that is, *come between*.

Intro signifies *to within*; as, *introduce*, that is, *lead within*.

Juxta signifies *nigh to*; as, *juxtaposition*, that is, *position nigh to* (a thing).

Ob signifies *in the way of* or *opposition*; as, *obstacle*, that is, *something standing in the way*. (*Ob* also has the various forms of *oc*, *of*, *o*, *op*; as, *occur*, *offend*, *omit*, *oppose*.)

Per signifies *through* or *thoroughly*; as, *perforate*, that is, *bore through*; *perfect*, that is, *thoroughly done*.

Post signifies *after*; as, *postdiluvian*, that is, *after the flood*.

Pre, or *præ*, signifies *before*; as, *predict*, that is, *tell before*.

Preter, or *præter*, signifies *past* or *beyond*; as, *preternatural*, that is, *beyond the course of nature*.

Pro signifies *for*, *forth*, or *forward*; as, *pronoun*, that is, *for a noun*; *provoke*, that is, *call forth*; *proceed*, that is, *go forward*.

Re signifies *back* or *again*; as, *retract*, that is, *draw back*; *rebuild*, that is, *build again*.

Retro signifies *backwards*; as, *retrospect*, that is, *a looking backwards*.

Se signifies *aside* or *apart*; as, *secede*, that is, *go aside* or *apart*.

Sine signifies *without*; as, *sinecure*, that is, *without care* or *labour*. (*Sine* also has the form of *sim* and *sin*; as, *simple* (without a fold); *sincere* (without mixture).)

Sub signifies *under* or *after*; as, *sub-beadle*, that is, *under-beadle*. (*Sub* has also the forms of *suc*, *suf*, *sug*, *sup*, *sus* (contracted for *sub*); as, *succeed*, *suffuse*, *suggest*, *suppress*, *suspend*.)

Subter signifies *under* or *beneath*; as, *subterfuge*, that is, *a flying under*, *a shift*.

Super signifies *above* or *over*; as, *superfluous*, that is, *flowing over* or *above*. (*Super* has also the French form, *sur*; as, *surmount*.)

Trans signifies *over from one place to another*; as, *transport*, that is, *carry over*.

Ultra signifies *beyond*; as, *ultra* mundane, that is, *beyond the world*.

The following are the prefixes of *Greek* origin, with their import:—

A or *an* signifies *without* or *privation*; as, *apathy*, that is, *want of feeling*; *anonymous*, that is, *without a name*.

Amphi signifies *both* or *the two*; as, *amphibious*, that is, *having both lives*, or *capable of living both in land and water*.

Ana signifies *through* or *up*; as, *anatomy*, that is, *a cutting through* or *up*.

Anti signifies *against*; as, *anti-Christ*, that is, *opposed to Christ*. (*Anti* has sometimes the contracted form of *ant*; as, *antarctic*, *opposite to the arctic* or *north*.)

Apo signifies *from* or *away*; as, *apostasy*, that is, *a standing or departure from*. (*Apo* has sometimes the contracted form of *ap*; as, *aphelion*, *away from the sun*.)

Cata signifies *down*; as, *catarrh*, that is, *a flowing down*, *a slight cold*.

Dia signifies *through*; as, *diaphanous*, that is, *appearing through*, *transparent*.

Epi signifies *upon*; as, *epitaph*, that is, *upon a tombstone*.

Hyper signifies *over and above*; as, *hypercritical*, that is, *over* or *too critical*.

Hypo signifies *under*; as, *hypothesis*, that is, *a placing under a supposition*.

Meta denotes *change*; as, *metamorphosis*, that is, *a change of shape*.

Para signifies *near to* or *side by side as if for the purpose of comparison*, and hence sometimes *similarity*, and sometimes *contrariety*; as, *parody*, *a poem imitated from another*; *paradox*, *an opinion contrary to the general opinion*.

Peri signifies *round about*; as, *periphrasis*, that is, *a round about mode of speaking*, *a circumlocution*.

Syn signifies *together*; as, *synthesis*, that is, *a placing together*. (*Syn* has also the forms *sy*, *syl*, *sym*; as, *system*, *sylogism*, *sympathy*.)

The *Affixes* have probably, in common with the *Prefixes*, considerable diversity of origin; but their origin, as well as their import, it is more difficult to ascertain.

The following are those which most frequently occur:—

<i>An</i>	denoting the <i>agent</i> or <i>doer</i> of a thing.	<i>Ac</i>	denoting <i>of</i> or <i>pertaining to</i> .	
<i>Ant</i>		<i>Al</i>		
<i>Ar</i>		<i>An</i>		
<i>Ard</i>		<i>Ar</i>		
<i>Ary</i>		<i>Ary</i>		
<i>Eer</i>		<i>En</i>		
<i>Ent</i>		<i>ic</i> or <i>ical</i>		
<i>Er</i>		<i>Ile</i>		
<i>Ist</i>		<i>Ine</i>		
<i>Ios</i>		<i>Ory</i>		
<i>Or</i>	denoting the <i>person acted upon</i> and equivalent to the <i>passive</i> termination <i>ed</i> .	<i>Ate</i>	denoting <i>full of</i> or <i>abundance</i> .	
<i>Ster</i>		<i>Ful</i>		
<i>Ate</i>		<i>Ose</i>		
<i>En</i>		<i>Ous</i>		
<i>Ite</i>		<i>Some</i>		
<i>Acy</i>	denoting <i>being</i> or <i>state of being</i> taken abstractly.	<i>Y</i>	denoting <i>likeness</i> .	
<i>Age</i>		<i>Ish</i>		
<i>Ance</i> or <i>Ancy</i>		<i>Like</i>		
<i>Ence</i> or <i>Ency</i>		<i>Ly</i>	denoting <i>capacity in an active</i> sense.	
<i>Hood</i>		<i>Ios</i>		
<i>Ion</i>		<i>Able</i>	denoting <i>capacity in a passive</i> sense.	
<i>Ism</i>		<i>Ible</i>		
<i>Ment</i>		Less denoting <i>privation</i> .		
<i>Mony</i>		<i>Ish</i> denoting <i>a smaller degree of</i> .		
<i>Nras</i>		<i>Ate</i>	denoting <i>to make</i> .	
<i>Ry</i>		<i>En</i>		
<i>Ship</i>		<i>Fy</i>		
<i>Th</i>		<i>Ish</i>		
<i>Tude</i>		<i>Ise</i>		
<i>Ty</i> or <i>ity</i>		<i>Ite</i>		
<i>Ure</i>	denoting <i>jurisdiction</i> .	<i>Ly</i> denoting <i>like in quality</i> .		
<i>Y</i>		<i>Ward</i> denoting <i>in the direction of</i> .		
<i>Dom</i>	diminutive terminations.			
<i>Ric</i>				
<i>Cle</i>				
<i>Kin</i>				
<i>Let</i>				
<i>Ling</i>				
<i>Ock</i>				

The parts of speech which are formed from radical words by means of affixes are, the Noun, the Adjective, the Verb, and the Adverb.

Nouns denoting the *agent*, or *doer* of a thing, are formed from nouns and verbs denoting the act, by adding the affixes *an*, *ant*, *ar*, *ard*, *ary*, *eer*, *ent*, *er*, *ist*, *ive*, *or*, *ster*; as,

From Guard	guardian	From Bake	baker
Assist	assistant	Murder	murderer
Beg	beggar	Conform	conformist
Dot	dotard	Operate	operative
Adverse	adversary	Inspect	inspector
Chariot	charioteer	Pun	punster
Adhere	adherent		

Nouns denoting the *person acted upon* are formed from nouns and verbs denoting the act or object, by adding the affixes *ate*, *ee*, *ite*; as,

From Potent	potentate	From Bedlam	bedlamite
Trust	trustee	Favour	favourite

Nouns ending in the affixes *er* or *or*, and *ee*, are used in opposition—the former denoting the *agent*, the latter the *person acted upon*; as, *assigner*, *assignee*; *indorser*, *indorsee*.

Nouns denoting *being, or state of being*, are formed from nouns, verbs, and adjectives, by adding *acy, age, ance, ancy, ence, ency, hood, ion, ism, ment, mony, ness, ry, ship, th, tude, ty or ity, ure, and y*; as,

From Pirate	piracy	From Contrite	contrition
Conspire	conspiracy	Despot	despotism
Intricate	intricacy	Parallel	parallelism
Bond	bondage	Achieve	achievement
Date	dotage	Merry	merriment
Repent	repentance	Acrid	acrimony
Fragrant	fragrance	Acute	acuteness
Expectant	expectancy	Rival	rivalry
Flagrant	flagrancy	Friend	friendship
Adherent	adherence	Deep	depth
Condole	condolence	Grow	growth
Abstinent	abstinence	Apt	aptitude
Agent	agency	Loyal	loyalty
Emerge	emergence	Absurd	absurdity
Decent	decency	Durable	durability
Boy	boyhood	Disclose	disclosure
Likely	likelihood	Master	mastery
Exhaust	exhaustion	Jealous	jealousy

Nouns denoting *jurisdiction* are formed from nouns or adjectives, by adding *dom or ric*; as,

From King	kingdom	From Bishop	bishopric
-----------	---------	-------------	-----------

Diminutive Nouns are formed from the names of persons or things, by adding *cle, kin, let, ling, ock*; as,

From Corpus	corpuscle	From Duck	duckling
Lamb	lambkin	Hill	hillock
Stream	streamlet		

ADJECTIVES denoting *of or pertaining to a thing* are formed from the name of the thing described, by adding *ac, al, an, ar, ary, en, ic or ical, ile, ine, ory*; as,

From Elegy	elegiac	From Angel	angelic
Autumn	autumnal	Canon	canonical
Republic	republican	Infant	infantile
Consul	consular	Adamant	adamantine
Moment	momentary	Expiate	expiatory
Wood	wooden		

Adjectives denoting *abundance* are formed from the names of the property, by adding *ate, ful, ose, ous, some, y*; as,

From Affliction	afflictionate	From Hazard	hazardous
Hope	hopeful	Glad	gladsome
Globe	globose	Pith	pithy

Adjectives denoting *likeness* are formed from nouns, by adding *ish, like, ly*; as,

From Child	childish	From Maiden	maidenly
Saint	saintlike		

Adjectives denoting *capacity in an active sense* are formed from verbs, by adding *ive*; as,

From Accumulate	accumulative
-----------------	--------------

Adjectives denoting *capacity in a passive sense* are formed from nouns or verbs, by adding *able, ible*; as,

From Detest	detestable	From Contempt	contemptible
-------------	------------	---------------	--------------

Adjectives denoting *privation* are formed from the name of the thing wanting, by adding *less*; as,

From Art	artless	From Cause	causeless
----------	---------	------------	-----------

Diminutive Adjectives are formed from other adjectives, by adding *ish*; as,

From Dark	darkish	From Brown	brownish
-----------	---------	------------	----------

VERBS involving the idea of *to make* as a part of their signification are formed from nouns and adjectives, by adding *ate, en, fy, ish, ise* or *ize*; as,

From Alien	alienate	From Public	publish
Perpetual	perpetuate	Pure	purify
Length	lengthen	Epitome	epitomise
Black	blacken	Equal	equalize
Type	typify		

Verbs ending in *en* are generally of Saxon origin, *en* or *an* being, in that language, the sign of the infinitive.

Verbs ending in *ate* are generally of Latin origin; but the distinguishing characteristic of verbs of Latin origin is, that they always form their past tense and perfect participle in *d* or *ed*, and are not in this respect subject to the same irregularities with those which are derived from the Saxon.

ADVERBS denoting *quality* are formed from adjectives, by adding *ly*; as,

From Abrupt	abruptly	From Kind	kindly
-------------	----------	-----------	--------

Adverbs denoting *in the direction of* are formed from nouns, adjectives, and other adverbs, by adding *ward*; as,

From Home	homeward	From On	onward
West	westward		

The English language has, in many instances, two sets of Derivative words expressive of the same thing, the one of Saxon, and the other of Latin origin. Thus,

SAXON.	LATIN.	SAXON.	LATIN.
Fearful	Timid	Height	Altitude
Swift	Velocity	Lifeless	Exanimate
Womanish	Effeminate	Yearly	Annual
Building	Edifice	Watery	Aqueous
Fewness	Paucity	Hearer	Auditor

The best specimens of pure unmixed Saxon are probably to be found in "The Bible" and in "The Pilgrim's Progress." Dr. Johnson's writings afford the best specimens of Latinized English. The Latinized style is the more sounding, the Saxon the more forcible.

English nouns are often of Saxon origin, while the corresponding adjectives are derived from the Latin.

The number of our inseparable roots being so great, it necessarily happens that a considerable proportion of our derivatives come *directly*

* Of the fifty-eight words of which the Lord's Prayer is composed, there are only three which are not immediately derivable from the Saxon.

from other languages, without having any corresponding primitives in English. But in no class of words is this so apparent as in adjectives formed directly from Latin nouns.*

The following are those which most frequently occur:—

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	From
Beginning	Initial	<i>initium</i>
Boundary	Conterminous	<i>conterminus</i>
Breast	Pectoral	<i>pectus</i>
Carcass	Cadaverous	<i>cadaver</i>
Cat	Feline	<i>felis</i>
Country	{ Rural }	<i>rus</i>
	{ Rustic }	
Cow	Vaccine	<i>vacca</i>
Degree	Gradual	<i>gradus</i>
Disease	Morbid	<i>morbus</i>
Dog	Canine	<i>canis</i>
Ear	Auricular	<i>auris</i>
End	Final	<i>finis</i>
Enemy	Hostile	<i>hostis</i>
Eye	Ocular	<i>oculus</i>
Field	Agrarian	<i>ager</i>
Finger	Digital	<i>digitus</i>
Flock	Gregarious	<i>grex</i>
Flour	Farinaceous	<i>farina</i>
Guardianship	{ Tutelar }	<i>tutela</i>
	{ Tutelary }	
Hand	Manual	<i>manus</i>
Head	Capital	<i>caput</i>
Hire	Mercenary	<i>merces</i>
Horse	Equestrian	<i>equus</i>
House	Domestic	<i>domus</i>
Island	Insular	<i>insula</i>
Kitchen	Culinary	<i>culina</i>
Light	Lucid	<i>lux</i>
Light	Luminous	<i>lumen</i>
Lion	Leonine	<i>leo</i>
Lungs	Pulmonary	<i>pulmo</i>
Mind	Mental	<i>mens</i>
Money	Pecuniary	<i>pecunia</i>
Moon	Lunar	<i>luna</i>
Mouth	Oral	<i>os</i>
Nose	Nasal	<i>nasus</i>
Place	Local	<i>locus</i>
Rabble	Vulgar	<i>vulgus</i>
Ring	Annular	<i>annulus</i>
Rival	Emulous	<i>emulus</i>
Root	Radical	<i>radix</i>
Rule	Regular	<i>regula</i>

* "In English, instead of *adjectiving* our own nouns, we have borrowed, in immense numbers, *adjectived* signs from other languages, without borrowing the unadjectived signs of these same ideas; because our authors found they had occasion for the former but not for the latter. And, not understanding the nature of language, or the nature of the very benefit they were receiving, they did not improve their own language by the same contrivance within itself, but borrowed from other languages abbreviations ready made to their hands. Thus, instead of turning such nouns as *finger, mind, life, skin, &c.*, into adjectives, they adopted adjectives formed from the corresponding nouns in other languages; as, *digital, mental, ritual, cutaneous, &c.* This practice is the more to be lamented, as it has rendered the English language very difficult to be acquired. For, as the matter now stands, when a poor foreigner has learned all the names of things in the English tongue, he must go to other languages for the *adjectived* names of the same things. And even an unlearned native can never understand the meaning of one quarter of that which is called his native tongue." — HORNE TOOKS.

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	From
Sea	{ Marine }	<i>mare</i>
	{ Maritime }	
Shepherd	Pastoral	<i>pastor</i>
Shoulder	Humeral	<i>humerus</i>
Side	Lateral	<i>latus</i>
Sight	Visual	<i>visus</i>
Soldier	Military	<i>miles</i>
Spring	Vernal	<i>ver</i>
Sun	Solar	<i>sol</i>
Theft	Furtive	<i>furtum</i>
Thigh	Femoral	<i>femur</i>
Tooth	Dental	<i>dens</i>
Treaty	Federal	<i>foedus</i>
Whale	Cetaceous	<i>cete</i>

Some nouns of Saxon origin have two sets of adjectives, one derived immediately from the nouns, the other from the Latin. Thus:—

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	From
Body	Bodily	Corporal	<i>corpus</i>
Boy	Boyish	Puerile	<i>puer</i>
Brother	Brotherly	Fraternal	<i>frater</i>
Burden	Burdensome	Onerous	<i>onus</i>
Day	Daily	Diurnal	<i>dies</i>
Death	Deadly	Mortal	<i>mors</i>
Earth	Earthly	Terrestrial	<i>terra</i>
Father	Fatherly	Paternal	<i>pater</i>
Fault	Faulty	Culpable	<i>culpa</i>
Fire	Fiercy	Igneous	<i>ignis</i>
Flesh	Fleshy	Carnal	<i>caro</i>
Glass	Glassy	Vitreous	<i>vitrum</i>
Grief	Grievous	Dolorous	<i>dolor</i>
Hair	Hairy	Capillary	<i>capillus</i>
Hatred	Hateful	Odious	<i>odium</i>
Health	Healthy	{ Salubrious }	<i>salus</i>
		{ Salutary }	
Heart	Heartly	Cordial	<i>cor</i>
Heaven	Heavenly	Celestial	<i>calum</i>
Help	Helpful	Auxiliary	<i>auxilium</i>
Ice	Icy	Glacial	<i>glacies</i>
King	Kingly	Regal	<i>rex</i>
Law	Lawful	Legal	<i>lex</i>
Life	Lively	Vital	<i>vita</i>
Love	Lovely	Amorous	<i>amor</i>
Man	Manly	Human	<i>homo</i>
Mother	Motherly	Maternal	<i>mater</i>
Night	Nightly	Nocturnal	<i>nox</i>
Pitch	Pitchy	Bituminous	<i>bitumen</i>
Point	Pointed	Punctual	<i>punctum</i>
Priest	Priestly	Sacerdotal	<i>sacerdos</i>
Reason	Reasonable	Rational	<i>ratio</i>
Star	Starry	Stellar	<i>stella</i>
Strength	Strong	Robust	<i>robur</i>
War	Warlike	Martial	<i>mars</i>
Water	Watery	Aqueous	<i>aqua</i>
Will	Willing	Voluntary	<i>voluntas</i>
Woman	Womanly	Effeminate	<i>femina</i>
Wood	Woody	Sylvan	<i>sylva</i>
World	Worldly	Mundane	<i>mundus</i>
Year	Yearly	Annual	<i>annus</i>

Some derivatives, from contraction, change of cognate letters, and similar causes, have undergone such alterations, that their origin is scarcely discernible.

Thus, *curfew*, the evening-bell (literally, cover-fire), is an abbreviation of *cover* and *feu* (fire), because it was the signal for extinguishing fires.

Quiver, that which holds or covers arrows, is another form of cover.

Proxy, one who is deputed to supply the place of another, is a contraction of *procuracy* (compounded of *pro*, for, and *cura*, care).

The two points which determine the affinity of words in respect of origin, are identity of letters and identity of signification, or letters of the same organ, and a signification obviously deducible from the same sense.

II. PRIMARY SIGNIFICATION OF WORDS.*

Language being intended for the communication of thought, the words of which it consists must each have a certain signification.

There does not seem to be any necessary connexion between words and the thoughts they express. They appear to have become significant merely by usage; and it is now impossible to say in what manner the conventional connexion between the sign and the thing signified was at first established.

Originally all words seem to have been applied in one sense only.

Words, after being introduced into a language, are often employed in different and successive meanings.

The same bias which leads man to enrich language rather by the modification of words already in use than by the creation of new

* The pupil should be cautioned against the error of supposing that the *present meaning* of words is to be acquired by learning the history of their pedigree. It is from established usage, not etymology, that the precise meaning of words must be gathered. Etymology is a deceitful guide in questions about the propriety or impropriety of expressions. The instances are few indeed, as is well remarked by Dugald Stewart, in which etymology furnishes effectual aids to guide us in fixing the exact signification of ambiguous terms, or in drawing the line between expressions which seem to be nearly equivalent. In such cases, nothing can be safely trusted to but that habit of accurate induction, which, by the study of the most approved models, elicits gradually and insensibly the precise notions which our best authors have annexed to their phraseology. Etymological researches are, however, of great use. Independently of their being calculated to gratify a natural and liberal curiosity, they furnish important data for illustrating the migrations of mankind, and the progress of laws, of arts, and of commerce; they throw light on peculiar constructions, and they enable a man to obtain a familiarity with the general meaning, as well as to acquire a mastery over the use of his language which no other study can impart.

ones, leads him also to prefer using an old word in a new sense to the inventing of an additional term.

The words *charity*, *conversation*, *offence*, *prevent*, are instances of words applied in the successive acceptations at different periods of time.

Charity is used in Scripture as synonymous with *love*; it is now very much restricted to *liberality to the poor*.

Conversation is used in Scripture to signify *citizenship*, or *freeman-ship*; it now commonly means *familiar discourse* or *intercourse*.

Offence, in Scripture, signifies a *stumbling-block* or *occasion of stumbling*; it now signifies a *cause of displeasure*.

To prevent, in Scripture and in the English liturgy, means *to go before* or *anticipate*; it now generally means *to obstruct* or *hinder*.

The signification of words is either *Primary* or *Secondary*.

The *Primary* or *radical* sense of a word is that in which it is first used in language.

The *Secondary* or *figurative* sense is that which is afterwards superinduced on the primary.

A word can have only one primary, but it may have various secondary meanings.

Some words are used in their primary sense only.

Some words are used both in their primary and secondary senses.

Thus, *to transport*, signifies *to carry across from one place to another*, which is its primary meaning; and also *to carry into banishment as a felon*, and *to carry away with pleasure*, which are secondary meanings.

Some words have lost their original and retain only their secondary significations.

Thus, *period*, which primarily signifies *a path round about, a circuit*, is restricted to express *a definite portion of time*, or *the end of a certain duration*, or *the point which marks the end of a complete sentence*.

The words which admit of the greatest latitude and variety of meaning are those which enter largely into composition as the radical parts of derivative or compound words.

Thus, the radical parts of the following words, all which represent *pater*, a father, have a difference of meaning in each.

Paternal, belonging to a father.

Patrimony, an inheritance acquired from a father.

Patriarch, one who governs by paternal right.

Patrician, a nobleman (of the rank of *patres*, or senators).

Patriot, one who loves his native or father land.

Patronymic, a family-name.

Patron, one who takes another under his care.

Parricide, one who kills his father.

Pater-noster, the Lord's Prayer (so called, because it begins "Pater noster," that is, "Our Father.")

The radical meaning of a word, when discovered, a ways furnishes the key which explains and reconciles the remotest of its secondary significations.

Thus, *to let*, which signifies both *to allow* and *to hinder*,* has its opposite meanings explained by a reference to its root *let*, which signifies a *sluice* or *vent* for water, which, of course, either *allows* or *obstructs* the flowing of the water, according as it is opened or shut.

In like manner, *heat* and *hate*, though apparently unconnected in present signification, are found to be reconcileable when discovered to be both derivatives of the same Saxon root *haetan*, to stir or agitate, *hate* and *heat* alike involving the idea of violent excitement.

So also *reck*, *reckon*, and *right*, though greatly varied in their application, are all from a root signifying stretching or straining. *Reck*, that is, *care*, is a *stretching* of the mind towards an object; *reckon*, both in its sense of *think* and in its sense of *calculate*, is also a *stretching* of the mind; and *right* is *strait* or *stretched*, whether used in its primary sense, as in the expression "A *right* line," or in its metaphorical sense, as in the expression, "The Lord will do that which is *right*."†

Many of the prepositions may also be cited as illustrations; their diverse and often opposite applications admitting of explanation from their primary meaning. Thus, *for* denotes both *in favour of* (as, "The gift is *for* a friend"), and *in opposition to* (as, "It rains; *for* all that, he will ride,"—that is, "in opposition to all that," or, "notwithstanding the rain, he will ride.") But the primary sense (from *faran*, to pass towards) of *passing* or *moving towards* a place, reconciles both significations. The *moving* or *going towards* a place

* As, "He let me go;" that is, "he *allowed* me to go." "I was let from coming unto you;" that is, "I was *hindered*," &c.

† These examples prove that words of the same generic meaning are often found in very different applications. But still more striking illustrations of this fact are furnished by the application of words of the same generic meaning in different languages. The same word, *leap*, is used both in English and in German; but in the former it signifies *simply to spring*; in the latter it signifies *to run*. *Anti* in Greek and *ante* in Latin not only represent the same idea, viz. *priority*, but they are the same words. Yet the former signifies *opposition*, and never priority in point of time merely; while the latter is employed to denote only priority in point of time.

or thing may either be in friendship or in hostility. Which of the two it is, in any one case, must be determined by the context,—all that the preposition expresses being simply the *going* or *moving towards*.

Words pass from original to secondary applications according to fixed rules.

The changes of meaning which words undergo being ultimately dependent upon the laws that govern human thought in the use of arbitrary signs, the connexion between the original and every successive sense in which they are employed is necessarily fixed. But this connexion cannot be always reduced to fixed rules; nor is it even possible in all cases to trace the progress of their meanings, or to show by what steps they have passed from their primitive to their present application.

The following are the transitions that most frequently occur:—

1. Words which primarily denote the qualities of sensible objects are extended to describe the analogous mental and moral qualities. Thus,

Sour signifies primarily *acid*; secondarily, *austere* or *peevish*.

Acute (from *acus*, a needle) signifies primarily *sharp*, opposed to blunt; secondarily, *ingenious*, opposed to stupid.

Sanguine (from *sanguis*, blood) signifies primarily *red*, like blood; secondarily, *ardent*.

2. Words are often transferred from one object to another which has some resemblance, real or supposed, to the former. Thus,

The Latin *granum*, a grain of corn (from whence the English *grain*), is the parent of *granite*, a stone spotted as if with grains.

Lens, a kind of *lentile* or *pulse*, is the parent of *lens*, a lentile-shaped piece of glass or other transparent substance used in optical science.

Pyr, the Greek word for *fire*, is perhaps the parent of *pyramid*, a building resembling in shape a flame of fire.

3. Words of a generic signification are often restricted in their application to a specific object or idea. Thus,

Deist, which primarily denotes one who has or admits a God, is the name for one who believes in a God but rejects Christianity.

Prelate signifies literally a person preferred or elevated; but it is limited to express an ecclesiastical dignitary, a bishop.

Rector literally means a *ruler* in general; but it is commonly restricted to mean either, as in England, a clergyman of a certain rank, or, as in Scotland, the head-master of a principal school.

4. Words which are specific in their primary application, often pass into general terms.

Of this description are all proper names which are used as common nouns, and adjectives derived from them. Thus,

Jesuit, which primarily means a member of the Society of Jesus, is applied generally to describe a *person of great subtlety and cunning*.

Philippic, the name of the orations in which Demosthenes inveighed against Philip of Macedon, is used to denote *invective* in general.

But words of this kind are not the only instances in which the tendency to generalize the signification of terms is to be found.

Birch, the twigs of which are employed in some English schools as the instrument of punishment, has come to mean *an instrument of correction* in general.

Emolument, which primarily means the *grist* of a mill, or *toll* taken for grinding, has been generalized to signify *profit* or *gain*, whatever be the source of it.

5. In many words the change from one meaning to another consists merely in a slight deflection or difference of application.

The following instances will illustrate the nature of the deflections by which words successively slide from one original import to a variety of figurative and remote applications:—

From the Latin *corpus, corporis*, the *body*, are derived

Corpse, a dead *body*.

Corporeal, of or belonging to the *body*.

Corpulence, bulkiness of *body*.

Corps, a *body* of soldiers.

Corporal, a subordinate military officer, commanding a small *body* of soldiers.

Corporation, a *body* municipal.

From the Latin *hospes, hospitis*, a *host* or *guest*, are derived

Hospitable, kind to strangers.

Hospital, a refuge for the sick.

Hotel (formerly *hostel*), an inn.

Hostler, the keeper of the horses at an inn.

From the French *jour*, a *day*, are deduced

Adjourn, to put off till another *day*.

Journal, a diary, and also a paper or book published periodically.

Journey, travel by land, originally the travel of a *day*.

Sojourn, to reside for a time, originally for a *day*.

Journeyman, a workman for a limited time, originally by the *day*.

From the French *parler*, to *speak*, are deduced

Parley, an oral treaty.

Parole, word of promise.

Parliament, the great British council.

Parlour, a room (for conversation).

From the Saxon *pocca* (in Scotch and Old English *poke*), a *bag*, are deduced

Pock (in the plural *pox*), pustule or vesicle (of the shape of a *bag*).

Pocket, a *bag* inserted into clothes.

Poach, to steal game (from the practice of putting it in a *bag*).

From the Latin *pondus, ponderis*, a *weight*, are deduced

Ponderous, heavy.

Ponder, to *weigh* mentally.

Pound, a specific weight; also a sum of money, 20s. value, so called from the money being originally *weighed*.

Pounder, a gun that carries a bullet of so many pounds, as a *six-pounder*.

Poise, to balance (a *weight*).

From the Latin *pono*, I *put* or *place*; *positus, put* or *placed*, are deduced

Position, situation.

Posture, attitude or *place* of the body.

Positive, certain (properly or certainly *placed* or *set*); also dogmatical (ready to *place* or lay down notions with confidence).

Post, a beam *set* erect; also any fixed *place* or station.

Post, mode of conveying letters or of travelling by means of horses *placed* at different stages.

Postage, payment for conveyance of letters.

Repository, a place where things are *deposited* or kept.

Supposititious, not genuine; put by trick in the *place* or character belonging to another.

Depose, to *put* down from an office; to degrade, or divest of.

Deponent, one who *lays* down or gives evidence in a court of justice.

Repose, rest; literally *placed* or laid back (for rest).

Expose, to lay open; generally applied to the exposure of evil.

Expound, to interpret.

Expositor, one who expounds or interprets.

Impose, to lay on, to cheat.

Imposition, laying on, cheating.

Impost, a tax (laid on).

Impostor, one who cheats by assuming a fictitious character.

From the Latin *primus, first*, are deduced

Prime, early, *first-rate*.

To *Prime*, to put the *first* powder in the pan of a gun.

Primer, a *first* book for children.

Premier, the *first* minister of state.

Primate, the *first* or highest ecclesiastic.

Primitive, ancient.

Prim (from primitive), formal, precise.

Primrose, an *early* flower in spring.

From the Latin *senex*, *old*, are deduced

Senior, elder in age or in office.

Signior, a title of respect (given originally to age).

Senate, a council (because composed originally among the Romans of old men).

Senator, a public councillor.

Sire, father; also a title of address to kings.

6. Many words owe their secondary sense to purely accidental and often very singular associations.

The following are instances:—

Atlas, a collection of maps, is derived from Atlas, an African king, who, from his fondness for astronomy, is said to have supported the heavens on his back, and whose portrait in this attitude is often prefixed to books of maps.

Cabal, a close intrigue, is said to owe its origin to the initial letters of the names of five celebrated cabinet ministers of Charles II.,—Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale. *Cabal*, the science of the Rabbins, is a word of Hebrew origin.

Clergy, the order of men set apart for the service of God, is from *cleros* (Gr.), a lot or inheritance, probably because the Hebrew priests had a special lot or portion assigned them among the other tribes.

Clerk, one who records transactions in writing, and formerly the usual name for a scholar, is from *clericus*, a clergyman, because the clergy were at one time the only persons who were fit for situations requiring learning.

Dactyl, a foot in verse, consisting of one long and two short syllables, is from *dactylos* (Gr.), a finger,—a finger consisting of a long and two short joints.

Pagan, a heathen, is from *pagus* (Lat.), a village; because, after the establishment of Christianity in the Roman empire, the heathen being driven to villages and other parts remote from cities, were called *pagani*, that is, villagers.

Pontiff, priest (in Latin *pontifex*, that is, bridge-maker), is said to have been originally applied to the ministers of religion; because at Rome they had the charge of repairing a particular bridge, which had also been built by them.

THE END.